# **User Guide**

**Scalers** 

# IN1608 xi Series

**Scaling Presentation Switchers** 







### **Safety Instructions**

فيما يتعلق بوجود جهد

### Safety Instructions • English

MARNING: This symbol, A, when used on the product, is intended to alert the user of the presence of uninsulated dangerous voltage within the product's enclosure that may present a risk of electric shock.

ATTENTION: This symbol, A, when used on the product, is intended to alert the user of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature provided with the equipment.

For information on safety guidelines, regulatory compliances, EMI/EMF compatibility, accessibility, and related topics, see the Extron Safety and Regulatory Compliance Guide, part number 68-290-01, on the Extron website, www.extron.com.

| نعليمات السلامة • العربية  |
|--|
| المنتج، مخصص لتنبيه المستخدم فيما يتعلق بوجود<br>كهرباني غير معزول على الغلاف الخارجي للمنتج و هو ما قد ينطوي على مخاطر حدوث صدم |
| كهربائية.  |

ا**نتبه:** هذا الرمز، 🛆، عند استخدامه على المنتج، مخصص لتنبيه المستخدم بتعليمات التشغيل والصيانة الهامة (الخدمة) في المواد التي يتم توفير ها مع المعدات.

للحصول على المزيد من المعلومات حول إرشادات السلامة، والتوافقات التنظيمية، والتوافق الكهر ومغناطيسي/المجال الكهرومغناطيسي، وإمكانية الوصول، والموضوعات ذات الصلة، يُرجى مراجعة دليل السلامة والتوافق التنظيمي www.extron.com الخاص بإكسترون، الجزء رقم 68-290-01، على موقع إكسترون،

#### Sicherheitsanweisungen • Deutsch

**WARUNG:** Dieses Symbol <u>A</u> auf demProdukt soll den Benutzer darauf aufmerksam machen, dass im Inneren des Gehäuses dieses Produktes gefährliche Spannungen herrschen, die nicht isoliert sind und die einen elektrischen Schlag verursachen können.

**VORSICHT:** Dieses Symbol **A** auf dem Produkt soll dem Benutzer in der im Lieferumfang enthaltenen Dokumentation besonders wichtige Hinweise zur Bedienung und Wartung (Instandhaltung) geben.

Weitere Informationen über die Sicherheitsrichtlinien, Produkthandhabung, EMI/EMF-Kompatibilität, Zugänglichkeit und verwandte Themen finden Sie in den Extron-Richtlinien für Sicherheit und Handhabung (Artikelnummer 68-290-01) auf der Extron-Website, www.extron.com

#### Instrucciones de seguridad • Español

ADVERTENCIA: Este símbolo, A, cuando se utiliza en el producto, avisa al usuario de la presencia de voltaje peligroso sin aislar dentro del producto, lo que puede representar un riesgo de descarga eléctrica.

ATENCIÓN: Este símbolo, A, cuando se utiliza en el producto, avisa al usuario de la presencia de importantes instrucciones de uso y mantenimiento estas estan incluidas en la documentación proporcionada con el equipo.

Para obtener información sobre directrices de seguridad, cumplimiento de normativas, compatibilidad electromagnética, accesibilidad y temas relacionados, consulte la Guía de cumplimiento de normativas y seguridad de Extron, referencia 68-290-01, en el sitio Web de Extron, www.extron.com

#### Instructions de sécurité • Français Ce pictogramme, A, lorsqu'il est utilisé sur le **AVERTISSEMENT:** produit, signale à l'utilisateur la présence à l'intérieur du boîtier du produit d'une tension électrique dangereuse susceptible de provoquer un choc électrique. ATTENTION : Ce pictogramme, A, lorsqu'il est utilisé sur le produit, signale à l'utilisateur des instructions d'utilisation ou de maintenance importantes qui se trouvent dans la documentation fournie avec l'équipement.

Pour en savoir plus sur les règles de sécurité, la conformité à la réglementation, la compatibilité EMI/EMF, l'accessibilité, et autres sujets connexes, lisez les informations de sécurité et de conformité Extron, réf. 68-290-01, sur le site Extron, www.extron.com

#### Istruzioni di sicurezza • Italiano

AVVERTENZA: Il simbolo, A, se usato sul prodotto, serve ad avvertire l'utente della presenza di tensione non isolata pericolosa all'interno del contenitore del prodotto che può costituire un rischio di scosse elettriche.

ATTENTZIONE: Il simbolo, A, se usato sul prodotto, serve ad avvertire l'utente della presenza di importanti istruzioni di funzionamento e manutenzione nella documentazione fornita con l'apparecchio.

Per informazioni su parametri di sicurezza, conformità alle normative, compatibilità EMI/EMF, accessibilità e argomenti simili, fare riferimento alla Guida alla conformità normativa e di sicurezza di Extron, cod. articolo 68-290-01, sul sito web di Extron, www.extron.com .

#### Instrukcje bezpieczeństwa • Polska

**OSTRZEŻENIE:** Ten symbol, <u>A</u>, gdy używany na produkt, ma na celu poinformować użytkownika o obecności izolowanego i niebezpiecznego napiecia wewnątrz obudowy produktu, który może stanowić zagrożenie porażenia prądem elektrycznym.

UWAGI: Ten symbol, 1, gdy używany na produkt, jest przeznaczony do ostrzegania użytkownika ważne operacyjne oraz instrukcje konserwacji (obsługi) w literaturze, wyposażone w sprzęt.

Informacji na temat wytycznych w sprawie bezpieczeństwa, regulacji wzajemnej zgodności, zgodność EMI/EMF, dostępności i Tematy pokrewne, zobacz Extron bezpieczeństwa i regulacyjnego zgodności przewodnik, cześć numer 68-290-01. na stronie internetowej Extron, www.extron.com

#### Инструкция по технике безопасности • Русский

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ: Данный символ, \land, если указан на продукте, предупреждает пользователя о наличии неизолированного опасного напряжения внутри корпуса продукта, которое может привести к поражению электрическим током.

ВНИМАНИЕ: Данный символ, 🕰, если указан на продукте, предупреждает пользователя о наличии важных инструкций по эксплуатации и обслуживанию в руководстве, прилагаемом к данному оборудованию.

Для получения информации о правилах техники безопасности, соблюдении нормативных требований, электромагнитной совместимости (ЭМП/ЭДС), возможности доступа и других вопросах см. руководство по безопасности и соблюдению нормативных требований Extron на сайте Extron: , www.extron.com, номер по каталогу - 68-290-01.

#### 安全说明•简体中文

警告:▲产品上的这个标志意在警告用户,该产品机壳内有暴露的危险 电压,有触电危险。

**注意**: ▲ 产品上的这个标志意在提示用户,设备随附的用户手册中有重要的操作和维护(维修)说明。

关于我们产品的安全指南、遵循的规范、EMI/EMF的兼容性、无障碍使用的特性等相关内容,敬请访问 Extron 网站,www.extron.com,参见 Extron 安全规范指南,产品编号 68-290-01。

#### 安全記事 • 繁體中文

警告▲ 若產品上使用此符號,是為了提醒使用者,產品機殼內存在未隔離的危險電壓,可能會導致觸電之風險。

注意 ▲ 若產品上使用此符號, 是為了提醒使用者, 設備隨附的用戶手冊中有重要的操作和維護(維修)説明。

有關安全性指導方針、法規遵守、EMI/EMF 相容性、存取範圍和相關主題的詳細資訊, 請瀏覽 Extron 網站:www.extron.com, 然後參閱《Extron 安全性與法規遵守手 冊》,準則編號 68-290-01。

#### 安全上のご注意・日本語

警告: この記号 が製品上に表示されている場合は、筐体内に絶縁されて いない高電圧が流れ、感電の危険があることを示しています。

注意: この記号 ▲ が製品上に表示されている場合は、本機の取扱説明書に 記載されている重要な操作と保守(整備)の指示についてユーザーの注意 を喚起するものです。

安全上のご注意、法規厳守、EMI/EMF適合性、その他の関連項目に ついては、エクストロンのウェブサイト www.extron.com より「Extron Safety and Regulatory Compliance Guide』(P/N 68-290-01) をご覧ください。

#### 안전 지침 ・ 한국어

**경고:** 이 기호 ⚠️가 제품에 사용될 경우, 제품의 인클로저 내에 있는 접지되지 않은 위험한 전류로 인해 사용자가 감전될 위험이 있음을 경고합니다.

주의: 이 기호 ▲ 가 제품에 사용될 경우, 장비와 함께 제공된 책자에 나와 있는 주요 운영 및 유지보수(정비) 지침을 경고합니다.

안전 가이드라인, 규제 준수, EMI/EMF 호환성, 접근성, 그리고 관련 항목에 대한 자세한 내용은 Extron 웹 사이트(www.extron.com)의 Extron 안전 및 규제 준수 안내서, 68-290-01 조항을 참조하십시오.

#### Copyright

© 2016-2023 Extron. All rights reserved. www.extron.com

#### Trademarks

All trademarks mentioned in this guide are the properties of their respective owners. The following registered trademarks (<sup>®</sup>), registered service marks (<sup>SM</sup>), and trademarks (<sup>TM</sup>) are the property of RGB Systems, Inc. or Extron (see the current list of trademarks on the **Terms of Use** page at www.extron.com):

#### Registered Trademarks (®)

Extron, Cable Cubby, ControlScript, CrossPoint, DTP, eBUS, EDID Manager, EDID Minder, eLink, Flat Field, FlexOS, Glitch Free, Global Configurator, Global Scripter, GlobalViewer, Hideaway, HyperLane, IP Intercom, IP Link, Key Minder, LinkLicense, Locklt, MediaLink, MediaPort, NAV, NetPA, PlenumVault, PoleVault, PowerCage, PURE3, Quantum, ShareLink, Show Me, SoundField, SpeedMount, SpeedSwitch, StudioStation, System *INTEGRATOR*, TeamWork, TouchLink, V-Lock, VN-Matrix, VoiceLift, WallVault, WindoWall, XPA, XTP, XTP Systems, and ZipClip

Registered Service Mark<sup>(SM)</sup>: S3 Service Support Solutions

#### Trademarks (TM)

AAP, AFL (Accu-RATE Frame Lock), ADSP (Advanced Digital Sync Processing), AVEdge, CableCover, CDRS (Class D Ripple Suppression), Codec Connect, DDSP (Digital Display Sync Processing), DMI (Dynamic Motion Interpolation), Driver Configurator, DSP Configurator, DSVP (Digital Sync Validation Processing), EQIP, Everlast, FastBite, Flex55, FOX, FOXBOX, IP Intercom HelpDesk, MAAP, MicroDigital, Opti-Torque, PendantConnect, ProDSP, QS-FPC (QuickSwitch Front Panel Controller), Room Agent, Scope-Trigger, SIS, Simple Instruction Set, Skew-Free, SpeedNav, Triple-Action Switching, True4K, True8K, Vector<sup>™</sup> 4K, WebShare, XTRA, and ZipCaddy

# **FCC Class A Notice**

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC rules. The Class A limits provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause interference. This interference must be corrected at the expense of the user.

## **ATTENTION:**

- The Twisted Pair Extension technology works with unshielded twisted pair (UTP) or shielded twisted pair (STP) cables; but to ensure FCC Class A and CE compliance, STP cables and STP Connectors are required.
- La technologie extension paires torsadées fonctionne avec les câbles paires torsadées blindées (UTP) ou non blindées (STP). Afin de s'assurer de la compatibilité entre FCC Classe A et CE, les câbles STP et les connecteurs STP sont nécessaires.

## NOTES:

- This unit was tested with shielded I/O cables on the peripheral devices. Shielded cables must be used to ensure compliance with FCC emissions limits.
- For more information on safety guidelines, regulatory compliances, EMI/EMF compatibility, accessibility, and related topics, see the Extron Safety and Regulatory Compliance Guide on the Extron website.

# **VCCI-A** Notice

この装置は、クラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると、電波妨害を引き 起こすことがあります。その場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。 VCCI-A

# 70 Volt Model

**CAUTION:** For MA 70 models, touching uninsulated amplifier terminals or wiring may results in an unpleasant sensation.

**ATTENTION :** Pour les modèles MA 70, veuillez ne pas toucher le câblage ou les bornes non isolées de l'amplificateur pour éviter toute sensation désagréable.

# **Battery Notice**

This product contains a battery. **Do not open the unit to replace the battery**. If the battery needs replacing, return the entire unit to Extron (for the correct address, see the Extron Warranty section on the last page of this guide).

**CAUTION:** Risk of explosion. Do not replace the battery with an incorrect type. Dispose of used batteries according to the instructions.

**ATTENTION :** Risque d'explosion. Ne pas remplacer la pile par le mauvais type de pile. Débarrassez-vous des piles usagées selon le mode d'emploi.

# **Conventions Used in this Guide**

## **Notifications**

The following notifications are used in this guide:

| CAUTIO  | AUTION: Risk of minor personal injury.                                   |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| ATTEN <sup>.</sup>  | <b>ENTION :</b> Risque de blessure mineure.                              |  |  |  |  |
| ATTENTION:  |  |  |  |  |  |
| • Ri  | Risk of property damage.   |  |  |  |  |
| • Ri  | Risque de dommages matériels.  |  |  |  |  |
| <b>NOTE:</b> A note draws attention to important information. |  |  |  |  |  |
| TIP:  | A tip provides a suggestion to make working with the application easier. |  |  |  |  |

## **Software Commands**

Commands are written in the fonts shown here:

```
^AR Merge Scene,,0p1 scene 1,1^B 51^W^C.0
[01] R 0004 00300 00400 00800 00600 [02] 35 [17] [03]
Essc X1 * X177* X20* X23* X21 CE ←
```

**NOTE:** For commands and examples of computer or device responses used in this guide, the character "**0**" is the number zero and "O" is the capital letter "o."

Computer responses and directory paths that do not have variables are written in the font shown here:

```
Reply from 208.132.180.48: bytes=32 times=2ms TTL=32 C:\Program Files\Extron
```

Variables are written in *italics* as shown here:

ping xxx.xxx.xxx.-t SOH R Data STX Command ETB ETX

Selectable items, such as menu names, menu options, buttons, tabs, and field names are written in the font shown here:

From the File menu, select New.

Click the  $\mathbf{0K}$  button.

# **Specifications Availability**

Product specifications are available on the Extron website, **www.extron.com**.

# **Extron Glossary of Terms**

A glossary of terms is available at https://www.extron.com/technology/glossary.aspx.

# Contents

| Introduction   |  |
|--|--|
| About this Guide   |  |
| Product Description  |  |
| Integrated Digital   | Twisted Pair Extension 2   |
| Video Processing   |  |
| Audio Integration  | Capabilities and Available   |
| Power Amplifier .  |  |
| Features   |  |
| Video Features   |  |
| Audio Features   |  |
| Control Features.  |  |
| General  |  |
| Features of the IP   | CP Models 6  |
| Control Methods  | 7  |
| Application Diagram  | s8   |
| Licensed Third-Party   | y Software Used in the   |
| Scalers  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
| Installation   |  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto   | <b>12</b> r Overview 12  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa  | <b>12</b><br>r Overview 12<br>ard Model) 12  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie  | 12           r Overview         12           ard Model)         12           er Models         13  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview   | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         er Models       13         v       14   |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connect   | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         ber Models       13         v       14         ions       14  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connect<br>Power and Input (  | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         er Models       13         /       14         ions       14         Connections       15  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connect<br>Power and Input 0<br>Output Connectio  | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         er Models       13         7       14         ions       14         Connections       15         ons       17   |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connect<br>Power and Input of<br>Output Connectio<br>Control Connectio  | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         er Models       13         v       14         ions       14         Connections       15         ons       17         ons       19  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connect<br>Power and Input 0<br>Output Connectio<br>Control Connectio<br>IPCP Pro 355 Con   | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         er Models       13         /       14         ions       14         Connections       15         ons       17         ons       19         ntrol Processor  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connect<br>Power and Input 0<br>Output Connectio<br>Control Connectio<br>IPCP Pro 355 Con<br>Connections  | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         er Models       13         7       14         ions       14         Connections       15         ons       17         ons       19         ntrol Processor       20   |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connect<br>Power and Input 0<br>Output Connectio<br>Control Connectio<br>IPCP Pro 355 Con<br>Connections<br>Connection Details .  | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         er Models       13         v       14         ions       14         Connections       15         ons       17         ons       19         ntrol Processor       20         20       20   |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connect<br>Power and Input 0<br>Output Connectio<br>Control Connectio<br>IPCP Pro 355 Con<br>Connections<br>Connection Details .<br>Analog Video Cor  | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         ber Models       13         v       14         ions       14         connections       15         ons       17         ons       19         ntrol Processor       20         20       20  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connection<br>Power and Input 0<br>Output Connection<br>Control Connection<br>IPCP Pro 355 Con<br>Connections<br>Connection Details .<br>Analog Video Cor<br>Analog Audio Cor   | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         ber Models       13         v       14         ions       14         Connections       15         ons       17         ons       19         ntrol Processor       20         and ction       20         and ction       20  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connect<br>Power and Input 0<br>Output Connectio<br>Control Connectio<br>IPCP Pro 355 Con<br>Connections<br>Connection Details .<br>Analog Video Cor<br>Analog Audio Cor<br>HDMI Connection   | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         ber Models       13         v       14         ions       14         Connections       15         ons       17         ons       19         ntrol Processor       20         nnection       20         nnection       21         ns       21  |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connect<br>Power and Input 0<br>Output Connection<br>Control Connection<br>IPCP Pro 355 Con<br>Connections<br>Connection Details .<br>Analog Video Cor<br>Analog Audio Cor<br>HDMI Connection<br>Serial and IR Inse                         | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         ber Models       13         ard Models       13         ard Models       13         ard Models       13         ard Models       13         are Models       14         connections       14         connections       15         ons       17         ons       19         ntrol Processor       20         annection       20         annection       21         as       21         rtion Connections       22 |
| Installation<br>IN1608 xi Connecto<br>IN1608 xi (Standa<br>IN1608 xi Amplifie<br>Installation Overview<br>Rear Panel Connection<br>Power and Input 0<br>Output Connection<br>Control Connection<br>IPCP Pro 355 Con<br>Connections<br>Connection Details .<br>Analog Video Cor<br>Analog Audio Cor<br>HDMI Connection<br>Serial and IR Inse<br>Twisted Pair Reco | 12         r Overview       12         ard Model)       12         ber Models       13         v       14         ions       14         ions       14         Connections       15         ons       17         ons       19         ntrol Processor       20         nnection       20         nnection       21         ns       21         rtion Connections for DTP       22   |

| Operation                             | 25 |
|---------------------------------------|----|
| Front Panel Overview                  | 25 |
| Powering Up                           |    |
| Input Selection                       |    |
| On-Screen Menu System                 |    |
| Front Panel Buttons                   | 27 |
| Menu Overview                         | 27 |
| Using the On-screen Menu              |    |
| Quick Setup Submenu                   | 29 |
| User Presets Submenu                  | 30 |
| Picture Controls Submenu              |    |
| Input Submenu                         | 32 |
| Output Submenu                        | 34 |
| Audio Submenu                         |    |
| Advanced Submenu                      | 38 |
| Communication Submenu                 | 41 |
| Device Info Submenu                   | 42 |
| Front Panel Lockout (Executive Modes) | 42 |
| Reset Modes                           | 43 |
| RS-232 Insertion                      | 44 |
| Enabling Ethernet and Captive Screw   |    |
| Insertion                             | 44 |
| Ethernet to RS-232 Insertion          | 44 |
| Captive Screw Signal Insertion        | 46 |
|                                       |    |
| SIS Configuration and Control         | 47 |
| -                                     |    |

| Host and Scaler Communication |            |
|-------------------------------|------------|
| Scaler-Initiated Messages     |            |
| Copyright Information         | 47         |
| Password Information          |            |
| Error Responses               |            |
| SIS Overview                  |            |
| Using the Command and Respons | e Table 49 |
| Symbol Definitions            |            |
| Command and Response Table    |            |

| Configuration Software                  | 78    |
|---|-------|
| Software Installation                   | 78    |
| Software Download Center Page           | 78    |
| Software Connection                     | 80    |
| Device Discovery Panel                  | 81    |
| TCP/IP Panel                            | 82    |
| Offline Device Preview                  | 83    |
| Software Overview                       | 84    |
| Software Menu                           | 84    |
| Device Menu                             | 87    |
| Internal Web Pages                      | 89    |
| Using the Internal Web Pages            | 89    |
| Accessing the Internal Web Pages        | 89    |
| Navigating the Internal Web Pages       | 90    |
| Turning Off Compatibility Mode          | 90    |
| AV Controls Panel                       | 90    |
| Auto-Image Button                       | 91    |
| AV Inputs Buttons                       | 91    |
| Breakaway Audio Checkbox                | 91    |
| Video and Audio Mute and Freeze Buttons | 92    |
| Input and Output Information            | 92    |
| Configuration Pages                     | 93    |
| Input and Output Configuration Page     | 93    |
| EDID Minder Page                        | 96    |
| Image Settings Page                     | 98    |
| Size and Position Page                  | . 102 |
| Audio Configuration Page                | . 103 |
| Preset Management Page                  | . 120 |
| Device Settings Page                    | . 122 |
| Hardware Pages                          | . 125 |
| Unit Information Page                   | . 125 |
| Device Name Page                        | . 126 |
| Communication Settings Page             | . 127 |
| Update Firmware Page                    | . 128 |
| Executive and Power Mode Page           | . 129 |
| Date and Time Page                      | . 130 |
| Password Page                           | . 131 |
| Reset Device Page                       | . 132 |
|   |       |
|   |       |

| Reference information | Reference | Information |  |
|-----------------------|-----------|-------------|--|
|-----------------------|-----------|-------------|--|

| Mounting                     | 134 |
|------------------------------|-----|
| Tabletop Mounting            | 134 |
| Rack Mounting Procedure      | 135 |
| Furniture Mounting           | 136 |
| Downloading Updated Firmware | 136 |

# Introduction

This section provides general information about this guide and the Extron IN1608 xi. Topics in this section include:

- About this Guide
- Product Description
- Features
- Application Diagrams
- Licensed Third-Party Software Used in the Scalers

# **About this Guide**

The IN1608 xi is available in the following models:

| Model                                 | Description   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| IN1608 xi                             | Standard model  |
| IN1608 xi SA                          | 2 x 50 watts stereo power amplifier                                   |
| IN1608 xi MA 70                       | 100 watts 70 V mono power amplifier                                   |
| IN1608 xi IPCP SA                     | Control processor and stereo amplifier                                |
| IN1608 xi IPCP SA with LinkLicense    | Control processor and stereo amplifier with LinkLicense UI upgrade    |
| IN1608 xi IPCP MA 70                  | Control Processor and 70 V mono amplifier                             |
| IN1608 xi IPCP MA 70 with LinkLicense | Control processor and 70 V mono amplifier with LinkLicense UI upgrade |

This guide describes how to install, operate, and configure the equipment.

In this guide, the names as listed above refer to specific IN1608 xi models. The term "scaler" is used interchangeably to refer to all IN1608 xi models.

The following terms refer to groups of IN1608 xi models:

- The term "IN1608 xi" refers to all IN1608 xi models.
- The term "standard model" refers to the basic IN1608 xi containing no amplifier or IPCP control processor
- The term "amplifier models" refers to IN1608 xi SA, IN1608 xi MA 70, IN1608 xi IPCP SA, and IN1608 xi IPCP MA 70 models.
- The term "SA models" or "stereo models" refers to the IN1608 xi SA and IN1608 xi IPCP xi SA models.
- The term "MA models" or "mono models" refers to the IN1608 xi MA 70 and IN1608 xi IPCP MA 70 models.
- The term "IPCP models" refers to IN1608 xi IPCP MA 70 and IN1608 xi IPCP SA models.

# **Product Description**

The Extron IN1608 xi is an HDCP-compliant scaling presentation switcher with four HDMI inputs, two configurable analog video inputs, and two Extron DTP inputs. It includes two HDMI outputs and one DTP/HDBT output, configurable separately. Amplifier models have an integrated Class D audio power amplifier, while IPCP models have a built-in IPCP Pro control processor for complete AV system control. The DTP inputs and output work with DTP endpoints to extend video, audio, and bidirectional control signals. Each DTP transmitter and receiver link requires a single shielded CATx cable. The DTP/HDBT output is configurable for HDBaseT compatibility by means of a switch on the IN1608 xi rear panel.

## **Integrated Digital Twisted Pair Extension**

The two DTP twisted pair inputs can receive signals from remote DTP transmitters in areas such as a conference table, lectern, or wall for connecting a guest laptop. The DTP inputs and the DTP output enable bidirectional RS-232 and IR signals to be inserted from a control system and transmitted over the shielded CATx cable along with the video and audio, enabling control of a source or display. Additionally, the IN1608 xi can send power to selected DTP transmitters and receivers over the same shielded CATx cable.

## **DTP input and output signals**

The DTP inputs and outputs are proprietary signals that are created within any of the Extron DTP Extender systems and transmitted over a single shielded twisted pair (STP) cable. The IN1608 xi accepts DTP inputs from transmitting devices such as the DTP T USW 333. Depending on the connected transmitting model, the transmitter generates the DTP signal from a variety of video and audio inputs, including HDMI, DVI, analog VGA, and embedded and analog audio. The DTP signal can also include bidirectional RS-232 and IR control signals from the connected transmitting and receiving devices or inserted locally, on the IN1608 xi.

Depending on the range of the transmitting or receiving device, the DTP inputs and outputs can each travel up to 330 feet (100 meters) or 230 feet (70 meters) without a loss of signal integrity. The TP inputs and outputs also support RS-232 insertion and dedicated universal asynchronous receiver/transmitters (UARTs).

## **Video Processing**

The IN1608 xi scales HDMI, RGB, component, S-video, and composite video signals to a common high resolution output. It provides 30-bit color processing and motion-adaptive deinterlacing for input signals up to 1080i. The analog video inputs are configurable for RGB computer video, HDTV, component video, RGBcvS video, S-video, and composite video. Additionally, the color space and chroma subsampling of the HDMI output can be automatically set to ensure compatibility with a connected DVI or HDMI display.

## Audio Integration Capabilities and Available Power Amplifier

The IN1608 xi can also serve as the central component for audio system integration. It includes eight-input audio switching, two mic/line inputs with phantom power, HDMI audio embedding and de-embedding, and several audio processing features for mixing, ducking, tone adjustments, and more. Audio configuration features and options can be accessed through the internal web pages, the Product Control Software (PCS), and the on-screen display (OSD).

IN1608 xi models are available with a choice of integrated power amplifiers. IN1608 xi SA models deliver stereo power amplification with 50 watts rms per channel into 4 ohms or 25 watts rms per channel into 8 ohms, while IN1608 xi MA models provide mono 70 volt amplification with 100 watts rms output.

# **Features**

# **Video Features**

- Video inputs Four HDMI, two universal 15-pin HD inputs for RGB, component video, RGBcvS video, S-video, or composite video, two DTP twisted pair inputs on RJ-45, six stereo balanced/unbalanced audio inputs on captive screw, two mic/line audio inputs on captive screw
- **Simultaneous video outputs** Two HDMI outputs and one DTP/HDBT output on RJ-45 drive up to three displays.
- HDMI, HDTV, RGB, and video source integration into presentation systems with audio switching Provides centralized switching for a wide range of AV sources.
- Selectable output rates from 640x480 to 1920x1200, including 1080p/60 and 2K
- **DTP output compatible with HDBaseT-enabled devices** The DTP output can be configured to send video and embedded audio, plus bidirectional RS-232 and IR signals, to an HDBaseT-enabled display.
- DTP inputs and output support transmission of video, control, and analog audio over a twisted pair cable Two DTP inputs and one DTP output support digital signal transmission of HDMI, DisplayPort, DVI, 3G-SDI, or VGA plus control and analog audio up to 330 feet (100 meters) over a shielded CATx cable.
- Advanced scaling engine Image scaling and video format conversion are performed at 30-bit precision for enhanced color accuracy and picture detail. Advanced deinterlacing for all interlaced signals up to 1080i delivers optimized image quality.
- Output muting control Provides the capability to mute one or all outputs at any time. This allows, for example, content to be viewed on a local monitor prior to appearing on the main presentation display.
- **Output volume control** Provides master volume control for the variable line level and amplified audio outputs.

# **Audio Features**

- Audio outputs One variable stereo audio output on captive screw, one variable stereo audio output configurable as dual mono on captive screw, speaker outputs on 5 mm, 4-pole captive screw connector (IN1608 xi SA models) or on 5 mm, 2-pole captive screw connector (IN1608 xi MA models)
- **Two mic/line inputs with 48 volt phantom power** Two mic or line level audio sources can be independently mixed with program audio and embedded onto the HDMI output. Selectable 48 volt phantom power allows the use of condenser microphones.
- **Mic ducking** Automatically reduces program audio when a microphone signal is detected, replacing the need for a separate audio ducking processor.
- **HDMI audio embedding** Analog input audio signals can be embedded onto the HDMI output signal.
- **HDMI audio de-embedding** Embedded HDMI two-channel PCM audio can be extracted to the analog outputs, or multi-channel bitstream formats can be passed to the HDMI outputs.

- Available with energy efficient Class D stereo or mono amplifier:
  - 2 x 50 watts @ 4 ohms, 2 x 25 watts @ 8 ohms
  - 1 x 100 watts @ 70 volts All IN1608 xi power amplifier options feature an Extron advanced Class D amplifier design with Class D Ripple Suppression (CDRS), an Extron patented technology that provides a smooth, clean audio waveform and an improvement in signal fidelity over conventional Class D amplifier designs. CDRS eliminates the high frequency switching ripple characteristic of Class D amplifiers, a source of RF emissions which can interfere with sensitive AV equipment such as wireless microphones.
- **Automatic clip limiter** Detects onset of clipping, automatically reducing gain to eliminate clipping and thereby protecting speakers and amplifiers from distortion.
- Audio input gain and attenuation Gain or attenuation can be adjusted for each audio input to eliminate noticeable differences when switching between sources.
- **Audio breakaway** Provides the capability to break an analog audio signal away from its corresponding video signal and route it to the audio outputs, allowing the analog audio channels to be operated as a separate switcher.
- **Audio switching transitions** The audio output level automatically ramps down and then ramps up to match the video during switching transitions.
- **Integrated audio delay** The audio output is automatically delayed to compensate for latency introduced by the video processing.
- Advanced audio configuration The IN1608 xi offers complete control of audio input and output gain, attenuation, mixing, and ducking parameters via a user-friendly GUI.
- Input audio muting The analog stereo and HDMI audio inputs can be individually muted.

## **Control Features**

- RS-232 insertion from the Ethernet control ports System level device control to all remote locations via the switcher Ethernet ports.
- Bidirectional RS-232 and IR insertion for AV device control Bidirectional RS-232 control and IR signals can be transmitted alongside the video signal over DTP connections, allowing the remote device to be controlled without additional cabling.
- Ethernet monitoring and control Enables control and proactive monitoring over a LAN, WAN, or the Internet. An intuitive web interface is included for full configuration of the unit.
- **Built-in web pages** Enables the use of a standard browser for full control and troubleshooting over an intuitive web interface.
- RS-232 control port Enables the use of serial commands for integration into a control system. Extron products use the SIS command protocol, a set of basic ASCII commands that allow for quick and easy programming.
- Front panel USB configuration port Enables configuration without having to access the rear panel.
- Product Configuration Software PCS enables configuration of multiple products using a single software application.
- **On-screen menus** OSD menus allow for system setup using the front panel controls.

# General

- Compatible with CATx shielded twisted pair cable The IN1608 xi fully supports the maximum specified transmission distance for all compatible resolutions when used with CATx shielded twisted pair cable. Shielded twisted pair cabling with solid center conductor sizes of 24 AWG or better is recommended for optimal performance. The Extron XTP DTP 24 shielded twisted pair cable is recommended for use with the IN1608 xi for optimum signal transmission.
- **Remote powering of select DTP transmitters and receivers** Can provide power to select DTP transmitters and DTP receivers over the twisted pair connections.
- Compatible with all DTP Series models and DTP-enabled products The integrated DTP inputs and output support mixing and matching with desktop and wallplate transmitters and receivers, as well as other DTP-enabled products, to meet application requirements.
- **Auto-switching between inputs** Auto-input switching allows for unmanaged installation in locations such as in a lectern or under a conference table. When multiple inputs are active, the switching priority is configurable.
- HDCP compliant Ensures display of content-protected media and interoperability with other HDCP-compliant devices.
- User-selectable HDCP authorization Allows individual inputs to appear HDCP compliant or non-HDCP compliant to the connected source, which is beneficial if the source automatically encrypts all content when connected to an HDCP-compliant device. Protected material is not passed in non-HDCP mode.
- Supported HDMI specification features include data rates up to 6.75 Gbps, Deep Color, and HD lossless audio formats
- Key Minder continuously verifies HDCP compliance for quick, reliable switching — Key Minder authenticates and maintains continuous HDCP encryption between input and output devices to ensure quick and reliable switching in professional AV environments, while enabling simultaneous distribution of a single source signal to one or more displays.
- EDID Minder automatically manages EDID communication between connected devices — EDID Minder ensures that all sources power up properly and reliably output content for display.
- SpeedSwitch Technology provides exceptional switching speed for HDCP-encrypted content.
- Aspect ratio control The aspect ratio of the video output can be controlled by selecting a FILL mode, which provides a full screen output, or a FOLLOW mode, which preserves the original aspect ratio of the input signal.
- HDCP authentication and signal presence confirmation Provides real-time verification of HDCP status for each digital video input and output. This allows for quick, signal and HDCP verification through front panel LEDs, RS-232, USB, or Ethernet.
- **HDCP visual confirmation** provides a green signal when HDCP-encrypted content is sent to a non-compliant display.
- HDMI to DVI Interface Format Correction Automatically enables or disables embedded audio and InfoFrames, and sets the correct color space for proper connection to HDMI and DVI displays.
- Seamless switching Seamless cut through black and fade through black transition effects are available to enhance presentations by eliminating distractions during switching.

- **Auto-Image setup** When activated, causes the unit to automatically optimize the image by analyzing and adjusting to the video input signal.
- **Auto Input Memory** When activated, causes the unit to automatically store size, position, and picture settings based on the incoming signal. When the same signal is detected again, these image settings are recalled from memory.
- **Output Standby Mode** The unit can be set to mute video and sync output to the display device when no active input signal is detected. This allows the projector or flat-panel display to automatically enter into standby mode to save energy and enhance lamp or panel life.
- **Power Save Mode** The unit can be placed in a low power standby state to conserve energy when not in use.
- Image freeze control A live image can be frozen using RS-232 serial control, USB, or Ethernet control.
- Picture controls for brightness, contrast, color, tint, detail, horizontal and vertical positioning, and sizing
- User presets Memory presets are available for each input to store and recall optimized image settings.
- Automatic 3:2 and 2:2 pulldown detection Advanced film mode processing techniques that help maximize image quality for NTSC, PAL, and 1080i sources that originated from film.
- Quad standard video decoding A temporal, 3D adaptive comb filter provides advanced decoding of composite NTSC 3.58, NTSC 4.43, PAL, and SECAM for integration into systems worldwide.
- Internal video test patterns and an audio pink noise generator for calibration and setup
- Front panel security lockout This feature locks out all front panel functions except for input selection. All functions remain available through Ethernet, USB, or RS-232 control.
- **RJ-45 signal and link LED indicators for DTP ports** Provides a means for validating signal flow and operation, allowing quick identification of connectivity issues.
- **Rack-mountable metal enclosure** The standard IN1608 xi features a 1U, full rack width metal enclosure. Models with a built-in power amplifier or control processor are housed in a 2U, full rack width metal enclosure.
- Includes LockIt HDMI cable lacing brackets
- Energy-efficient internal universal power supply The 100-240 VAC, 50-60 Hz, international power supply provides worldwide power compatibility with high demonstrated reliability.

# **Features of the IPCP Models**

The IPCP models have an integrated three-port AV LAN switch to allow AV devices to be isolated from the corporate network. These models include a built-in IPCP Pro control processor for complete AV system control.

- Support of Extron TouchLink Pro touchpanels and eBUS button panels
- Integrated three-port AV LAN switch allows AV devices to be isolated from the corporate network.
- Secure industry standard communications protocols, including HTTP (not secure), HTTPS, SSH, SFTP, SMTP, NTP, Discovery Service, DHCP, DNS, ICMP, and IPv4
- **Extron LinkLicense** enhances the capabilities of Extron Pro Series control systems.

- Two bidirectional RS-232 captive screw serial ports that can control two RS-232 devices
- One bidirectional RS-232 captive screw serial port that can communicate with one RS-232 serially controlled device.
- Two IR/Serial ports for one-way control of external devices
- Four digital I/O ports for interfacing with other systems in the room
- Four relays for controlling room functions such as lighting, screen settings, and other device functions.
- **eBUS port** for connecting eBUS button panels and accessories
- Ethernet monitoring and control of AV devices using a standard Ethernet network
- **DHCP server for AV LAN** automatically distributes IP addresses and network configuration parameters for AV devices connected to the local AV LAN.
- AV LAN permits communications from the Ethernet port for remote management and firmware updates to Extron devices. Extron devices on the AV LAN can receive firmware updates and be remotely monitored, managed, and controlled through Extron GlobalViewer Enterprise.
- **Building Management System (BMS) protocols**, such as BACnet, KNX, and DALI, which allow for centralized monitoring and control of mechanical and electrical systems that include HVAC, lighting, power, fire, and security.
- 10/100/1000Base-T Ethernet
- Front panel port status indicators
- Multi-level password protection allows security to be set based on user roles.

**NOTE:** The factory configured passwords for all accounts on this device have been set to the device serial number. Passwords are case sensitive. In the event of a reset to factory defaults, the password is set to no password.

- **Fully customizable using Extron control system software** GUI Designer can be combined with Global Configurator Plus or Global Configurator Professional.
- Allows multiple IP Link Pro control processors to be grouped together to function as one when configured with Global Configurator Professional.
- A library of enhanced Extron Certified device drivers allows Extron products to control various display and source devices.

# **Control Methods**

Control the scalers using one or more of the following methods:

- The front panel controls and the on-screen display (OSD) menu (see **On-Screen Menu System** on page 27).
- A computer, a touch screen panel, or any other device that sends and receives serial communications through the USB, RS-232, or Ethernet port. Use the Extron DataViewer utility on the connected device to enter SIS commands (see SIS Configuration and Control on page 47).
- The Extron Product Configuration Software (PCS) on a computer with a Windows<sup>®</sup> operating system (see Configuration Software on page 78 and the IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help file).
- Internal web pages, providing a web browser-based interface for controlling the switcher from a computer over a LAN network (see **Internal Web Pages** on page 89).

• Ethernet control via IP Link (IPCP models only), enabling the switcher to be controlled and actively monitored over a LAN, WAN, or the Internet.

Setup of the IPCP control processor, built into IPCP models, requires the Extron Global Configurator Plus or Global Configurator Professional, available for download from the Extron website if you have to have an Extron Insider account. The IPCP offers Ethernet control of external devices and provides RS-232 and IR-based control, relays, and digital I/O controls that can control and monitor a variety of external devices, such as projectors and lights.

**NOTE:** See the *IPCP Pro Series User Guide* at **www.extron.com** for control options of the IPCP Pro 355 control processor.

# **Application Diagrams**

The following diagrams show examples of typical applications for different IN1608 xi models.







Figure 2. IN1608 xi IPCP MA 70 Application Example





# Licensed Third-Party Software Used in the Scalers

The scalers use various licensed third-party software packages during operation. To view details about third-party packages and associated licensing, click the License Information button on the Unit Information page of the internal web pages (see Unit Information Page on page 125). Alternatively, see the *IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help* file.

To view a copy of a listed package license, in the License Information dialog box, click the link in the License column for the relevant package. A copy of the package license opens in a separate page.

The following table lists the licensed third-party software packages used by the scalers.

**NOTE:** Licensed third-party software packages used by the scalers are subject to

| change without notice.                                 |                           |               |               |
|--|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Licensed Third-party Software Used in IN1608 xi Models |                           |               |               |
| Package  | License                   | Package       | License       |
| avahi  | GNU LGPL v2.1             | lightpd       | BSD           |
| bstrib   | BSD                       | Linux         | GNU GPL v2    |
| busybox  | GNU GPL v2                | lua           | MIT           |
| bzip2  | BSD                       | lua-cjson     | MIT           |
| cjson  | MIT                       | luafilesystem | MIT           |
| expat  | MIT                       | luasocket     | MIT           |
| ExtJS 4  | Sencha Commercial License | luastruct     | MIT           |
| fcgi   | fcgi                      | mtd           | GNU GPL v2    |
| freetype   | FreeType License          | ncurses       | MIT           |
| gnupg-1.4.7  | GNU GPL v2                | openssh       | BSD           |
| gpgme  | GNU LGPL                  | openssl       | OpenSSL       |
| ifplugd  | GNU GPL                   | PAM           | BSD           |
| jpeg   | libjpeg                   | pcre          | BSD           |
| libassuan  | GNU LGPL                  | psmisc        | GNU GPL v2    |
| libcgicc 3.2.3   | GNU LGPL v2.1             | qt            | GNU LGPL v2.1 |
| libcurl  | ICS                       | socat         | GNU GPL v2    |
| libdaemon  | GNU GPL v2.1              | spawn-fcgi    | BSD           |
| libdnet  | BSD                       | sqlite        | Public Domain |
| libgpg   | GNU LGPL v2.1             | xinetd        | custom        |
| libpcap  | BSD                       | zlib          | zlib          |
| libpng   | libpng license            |               |               |

IN1608 xi Scaling Presentation Switcher • Introduction 11

# Installation

This section contains information on how to connect cables to the IN1608 xi models. Topics in this section include:

- IN1608 xi Connector Overview
- Installation Overview
- Rear Panel Connections
- Connection Details

# **IN1608 xi Connector Overview**

All IN1608 xi models feature four HDMI, two DTP, and two universal analog video inputs, along with stereo balanced or unbalanced audio connectors for each input. They also features two mic/line audio inputs. Outputs include two HDMI outputs, two variable audio outputs, and a TP output with corresponding RS-232 and IR Over DTP pass-through connectors. Control connectors include a Remote RS-232 and LAN connector.

# IN1608 xi (Standard Model)

The standard IN1608 xi model has all the connectors listed above.



Figure 4. IN1608 xi Standard Model Rear Panel

## **IN1608 xi Amplifier Models**

The IN1608 xi amplifier models (see figure 5) have all the connectors of the standard IN1608 xi plus an amplified audio connector. The SA models feature a 4-pole captive screw connector while the MA models features a 2-pole captive screw connector for amplified audio output.



IN1608 xi SA



IN1608 xi MA 70



## IN1608 xi IPCP models

The IN1608 xi IPCP models (see figure 6) are amplifier models that also have an IPCP Pro 355 control processor. The LAN connector is incorporated into the IPCP Pro 355 control processor instead of the scaler. Otherwise, the IN1608 xi IPCP SA includes all the connectors of the IN1608 xi SA, and the IN1608 xi IPCP MA 70 includes all of the connectors of the IN1608 xi MA.



IN1608 xi IPCP SA



IN1608(xi IPCP MA 70



# **Installation Overview**

- 1. Turn off or disconnect all related equipment. Ensure that video sources and output displays are all turned off and disconnected from the power source.
- 2. Mount the scaler (see Mounting on page 134).
- 3. Connect input sources (see **Power and Input Connections** on the next page).
- 4. Connect output devices (see Output Connections on page 17).
- Connect desired control devices (see Control Connections on page 19 or IPCP Pro 355 Control Processor Connections on page 20).
- 6. Connect a power source to the scaler (see Power and Input Connections).
- 7. Configure the scaler (see Control Methods on page 7).

# **Rear Panel Connections**

Figure 7 shows the rear panel connectors available on most IN1608 xi models (the IN1608 xi SA is used as an example). For information on the IPCP Pro 355 control processor module, see **IPCP Pro 355 Control Processor Connections**.



Figure 7. Rear Panel Connectors (IN1608 xi SA Example)

# **Power and Input Connections**



AC Power connector — Connect the standard IEC power cord from a 100 to 240 VAC, 50-60 Hz power source into this connector. The front panel control and input selection buttons light in sequence during power-up.

Analog video input connectors — Connect video sources to the 15-pin HD connectors. Each accepts RGB, YUV, RGBcvS, S-video, or composite video (see Analog Video Connection on page 20).

**G** HDMI input connectors – Connect video sources to the HDMI connectors.

**TIP:** Use Extron HDMI LockIt Lacing Brackets to secure HDMI cables to the device (see **HDMI Connections** on page 22).

DTP input connectors — Connect DTP transmitters to the DTP IN RJ-45 connectors to send and receive DTP signals over a single twisted pair cable (see Twisted Pair Recommendations for DTP and HDBaseT Communication on page 24 for wiring and cable recommendations).

**NOTE:** Depending on the connected transmitters, the DTP input can travel up to 330 feet (100 meters) without a loss of signal integrity.

This connection supports the following:

- HDCP-compliant digital video
- Embedded digital audio de-embedding from the TMDS source or analog audio
- DTP standard RS-232 and IR pass-through signals on associated 5-pole captive screw connectors
- Ethernet insertion of RS-232 control signals onto the cable that carries video and audio to extend them to the Over TP port on a connected endpoint (source or sink)
- Remote power to DTP transmitters

#### **ATTENTION:**

- Do not connect these connectors to a computer or telecommunications network.
- Ne connectez pas ces ports à des données informatiques ou à un réseau de télécommunications.
- DTP remote power is intended for indoor use only. No part of the network that uses DTP remote power should be routed outdoors.
- L'alimentation DTP à distance est destiné à une utilisation en intérieur seulement. Aucune partie du réseau qui utilise l'alimentation DTP à distance ne peut être routée en extérieur.
- Signal LED Lights when the scaler is receiving an active video signal from a DTP transmitter.
- Link LED Lights when a valid link is established to a DTP transmitter.

**RS-232 Over DTP port** — To pass bidirectional serial control between DTP-compatible devices, connect a control device to the 5-pole captive screw connector. This port includes only the 3 poles labeled "RS-232."

**IR Over DTP port** — To transmit and receive IR signals, connect a control device to the 5-pole captive screw connector. This port includes only the 2 poles labeled "IR" and shares the ground pole with the RS-232 port.





**NOTE:** RS-232 and IR data can be transmitted simultaneously.

- Analog audio input connectors Connect audio sources to the 5-pole captive screw connectors associated with the desired input. Wire the connector for line level, balanced or unbalanced, analog stereo (see Analog Audio Connection on page 21).
- F Mic/line connectors Connect unbalanced audio sources to the 3-pole captive screw connectors for configurable mic or line level inputs.

| $\rightarrow$ $\frac{3}{16}$ (5 mm) MAX. |
|--|
| Do not tin the wires!                    |
| Tip                                      |



**Unbalanced Mic Input** 

Sleeve

Balanced Mic Input



# **Output Connections**





DTP output connector — Depending on the selected mode (DTP or HDBaseT), connect either a DTP receiver or an HDBaseT-compatible output device to the RJ-45 OUT connector (see Twisted Pair Recommendations for DTP and HDBaseT Communication on page 24). The DTP output signal can travel up to 330 feet (100 meters) without a loss of signal integrity.

|   | Signal Support  |   |  |  |
|---|---|---|--|--|
|   | DTP Mode  | HDBaseT Mode  |  |  |
| • | HDCP-compliant digital video  | HDCP-compliant digital video  |  |  |
| • | Re-embedded program audio into the TMDS output or analog audio  | Re-embedded program audio into the TMDS output  |  |  |
| • | DTP standard RS-232 and IR<br>pass-through signals on the<br>associated 5-pole captive screw  | RS-232 and IR pass-through signals<br>on the associated 5-pole captive<br>screw connector |  |  |
| • | connector<br>Remote power to a DTP receiver   | Ethernet insertion of RS-232 control signals  |  |  |
| • | Ethernet insertion of RS-232 control signals onto the cable that carries video and audio to extend them to the Over TP port on a connected endpoint (source or sink). |   |  |  |

## **ATTENTION:**

- Do not connect this connector to a computer or telecommunications network.
- Ne connectez pas ce port à des données informatiques ou à un réseau de télécommunications.
- DTP remote power is intended for indoor use only. No part of the network that uses DTP remote power should be routed outdoors.
- L'alimentation DTP à distance est destiné à une utilisation en intérieur seulement. Aucune partie du réseau qui utilise l'alimentation DTP à distance ne peut être routée en extérieur.

- **Signal LED** Lights when the scaler is sending a signal.
- Link LED Lights when a valid link is established.

**RS-232 Over TP port** — To pass bidirectional serial control, connect a control device to the 5-pole captive screw connector. This port consists of the three poles labeled "RS-232" and shares the ground pole with the IR port.

**IR Over TP port** — To transmit and receive IR signals, connect a control device to the 5-pole captive screw connector. This port consists of the two poles labeled "IR" and shares the ground pole with the RS-232 port.



Figure 12. RS-232 and IR Over TP Wiring

**NOTE:** RS-232 and IR data can be transmitted simultaneously.

B HDMI output connectors — Connect HDMI display devices to these connectors. Use either of the connectors for a local monitor to display the On-screen Display (OSD) menu (see Operation on page 25).

**TIP:** Use Extron HDMI LockIt Lacing Brackets to secure HDMI cables to the device (see **HDMI Connections** on page 22).

C Analog audio output connectors — Connect audio output devices to these 5-pole captive screw connectors. Wire the connector for line level, balanced or unbalanced, analog stereo (see Analog Audio Connection on page 21).

### Amplified Output —

**Stereo audio models** — Connect unpowered, 4-ohm or 8-ohm speakers to this 4-pole 5 mm captive screw connector to play amplified stereo audio from the Amplified Output.

**Mono audio models** — Connect unpowered, high impedance speakers to this 2-pole captive screw connector to play the amplified mono audio from the Amplified Output.



AMPLIFIED OUTPUT

#### ATTENTION:

- Ensure the rated input voltage of the speakers matches the rated output voltage of the switcher.
- Assurez-vous que la tension nominale d'entrée des enceintes soit compatible avec la tension nominale de sortie du sélecteur.

**TP output mode selection switch** — This toggle switch lets you select between DTP (default) and HDBaseT modes for the twisted pair output. Set the switch to the down position to select DTP (which also enables +12 V remote power). For HDBT, set the switch to up (remote power is disabled).

#### ATTENTION:

- Position this switch **before** connecting the appropriate device to the DTP connector. Failure to comply can damage the endpoint.
- Positionnez le sélecteur **avant** de connecter l'appareil approprié au connecteur DTP. Ne pas respecter cette procédure poutrait endommager le point de connexion.

# **Control Connections**



### **A** LAN connector

B Remote RS-232 connector

#### Figure 13. Control Connectors (IN1608 xi SA Example)

| A | LAN connector — Connect a computer network to this RJ-45 connector. Use a patch  |
|---|--|
|   | cable to connect to a switch, hub, or router. Wire the connector as shown below. |

| Pin | T568A<br>Wire Color | T568B<br>Wire Color | Pins:<br>12345678            |
|-----|---------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| 1   | White-green         | White-orange        |                              |
| 2   | Green               | Orange              |                              |
| 3   | White-orange        | White-green         |                              |
| 4   | Blue                | Blue                |                              |
| 5   | White-blue          | White-blue          |                              |
| 6   | Orange              | Green               | Insert Twisted<br>Pair Wires |
| 7   | White-brown         | White-brown         | RJ-45                        |
| 8   | Brown               | Brown               | Connector                    |

LEDs on this connector indicate link and activity status.

B Remote RS-232 connector — Connect a host device to this 3-pole captive screw connector for RS-232 serial control. The default baud rate is 9600.



Figure 14. RS-232 Wiring

# **IPCP Pro 355 Control Processor Connections**

The IN1608 xi IPCP models include a built-in IPCP Pro 355 dual-NIC control processor. For these models, the LAN connector is incorporated in the IPCP Pro 355 control processor. For installation details of this control processor, see the *IPCP Pro Series User Guide* at **www.extron.com**.



Figure 15. IPCP Pro 355 Control Processor

# **Connection Details**

# **Analog Video Connection**

| Pinout Table for 15-pin HD Connectors |                              |               |                 |            |          |              |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------|----------|--------------|
| Pin                                   | RGBHV                        | RGBs          | RGBcvS          | Component  | S-video  | Composite    |
| 1                                     | Red                          | Red           | Red             | R-Y        |          |              |
| 2                                     | Green                        | Green         | Green           | Y          | Luma     | Video        |
| 3                                     | Blue                         | Blue          | Blue            | B-Y        | Chroma   |              |
| 4                                     |                              |               |                 |            |          |              |
| 5                                     | H Sync Return                | C Sync Return | Sync Return     |            |          |              |
| 6                                     | Red Return                   | Red Return    |                 | R-Y Return |          |              |
| 7                                     | Green Return                 | Green Return  |                 | Y Return   | L Return | Video Return |
| 8                                     | Blue Return                  | Blue Return   |                 | B-Y Return | C Return |              |
| 9                                     |                              |               |                 |            |          |              |
| 10                                    | V Sync Return/<br>DDC Return | DDC Return    |                 |            |          |              |
| 11                                    |                              |               |                 |            |          |              |
| 12                                    | EDID/DDC                     | EDID/DDC      |                 |            | 5 _ 1    |              |
| 13                                    | H Sync                       | C Sync        | Composite Video |            |          | Ĩ            |
| 14                                    | V Sync                       |               |                 | ]          |          | <i>¥</i>     |
| 15                                    | EDID/DDC                     | EDID/DDC      |                 |            | 15 11    |              |

# **Analog Audio Connection**

Wire the audio input and output connectors as shown in figure 16. Use the supplied tie wrap to strap the audio cable to the extended tail of the connector. This does not apply to the amplified audio output connector on the SA and MA models.





#### **ATTENTION:**

- For unbalanced audio, connect the sleeves to the ground contact. Do not connect them to negative (–) contacts.
- Pour l'audio asymétrique, connectez les manchons au contact au sol. Ne PAS connecter les manchons aux contacts négatifs (–).

## NOTES:

- The length of the exposed wires in the stripping process is important. The ideal length is 3/16 inch (5 mm). If the exposed portion is longer, the wires may touch, causing a short circuit between them. If the exposed wires are shorter, they can be easily pulled out, even if tightly fastened by the captive screws.
- Do not tin the wires. Tinned wire does not hold its shape and can become loose over time.

## **HDMI** Connections

Use an Extron LockIt cable lacing bracket to secure HDMI cables to the device. One bracket secures up to two HDMI cables in a stacked formation (see figure 17), but each stacked formation supports up to two brackets (one on each side) for added support if necessary.





To install a Locklt cable lacing bracket, perform the following:



## Figure 18. LockIt Cable Lacing Bracket Mounting Instructions

- Loosen the side HDMI connection mounting screw (see figure 18, ●) so there is enough space between the device and the screw head to fit the cable lacing bracket. Do not remove the screw from the device.
- 2. Plug the HDMI cables into the panel connection (2).
- **3.** Place the bracket on the screw and against the HDMI cables, and then tighten the screw to secure the bracket (③).

#### **ATTENTION:**

- Do not overtighten the screw. The shield to which it is fastened is very thin and can easily be stripped.
- Ne serrez pas trop la vis. Le blindage auquel elle est attachée est très fin et peut facilement être dénudé.
- 4. Loosely place the included tie wrap around the HDMI connector and the LockIt lacing bracket (4).
- 5. While holding the connector securely against the lacing bracket, use pliers or a similar tool to tighten the tie wrap, then remove any excess length.

## Serial and IR Insertion Connections



#### Figure 19. Serial and IR Insertion Connections

- Over TP (inputs 7 and 8) ports If desired, connect serial RS-232 signals, modulated IR signals, or both to these 3.5 mm, 5-pole captive screw connectors to insert bidirectional RS-232 and IR communications onto the associated inputs (see "Serial and IR port connectors" to wire the cables).
- Over TP (output 1C) port If desired, connect a serial RS-232 signal, modulated IR signal, or both to this 3.5 mm, 5-pole captive screw connector to insert bidirectional RS-232 and IR communications onto the associated output (see "Serial and IR port connectors" to wire the cables).

- **NOTE:** These ports enable you to insert RS-232 control signals onto the same cable that carries video and audio to extend them to the Over TP port of a connected endpoint. The control signals can be inserted two ways:
  - Ethernet to RS-232 insertion (see Ethernet to RS-232 Insertion on page 44), in which a control signal applied to an IN1608 xi LAN port can be routed to the RS-232 port of any connected twisted pair device.
  - Captive screw insertion (see Captive Screw Signal Insertion on page 46), in which a control signal applied to an RS-232 captive screw port is tied directly to the same-numbered TP port (RS-232 input port 7 is tied to TP port 7 *only*, and 8 is tied to 8).

## Serial and IR port connectors

Figure 20 shows how to wire the Over DTP RS-232 and IR and Remote connectors.



## Figure 20. RS-232 and IR Connectors Wiring

**NOTE:** The length of the exposed wires is important. The ideal length is 3/16 inch (5 mm).

# **Twisted Pair Recommendations for DTP and HDBaseT Communication**

Use the following pin configurations for shielded twisted pair cables used for DTP or HDBaseT communication.

| Pin | T568B<br>Wire Color | Pins:<br>12345678            |
|-----|---------------------|------------------------------|
| 1   | White-orange        |                              |
| 2   | Orange              |                              |
| 3   | White-green         |                              |
| 4   | Blue                |                              |
| 5   | White-blue          |                              |
| 6   | Green               | Insert Twisted<br>Pair Wires |
| 7   | White-brown         | RJ-45<br>Connector           |
| 8   | Brown               | Connector                    |

Figure 21. Twisted Pair Cable Configuration

## **Supported cables**

The scalers are compatible with shielded twisted pair (F/UTP, SF/UTP, and S/FTP) cable.

## ATTENTION:

•

- Do not use Extron UTP23SF-4 Enhanced Skew-Free AV UTP cable or STP201 cable to link the device with DTP transmitters or receivers.
- N'utilisez pas le câble AV Skew-Free UTP version améliorée UTP23SF d'Extron ou le câble STP201 pour relier le appareil avec les émetteurs ou les récepteurs DTP.

### **Cable recommendations**

Extron recommends using the following practices to achieve full transmission distances and reduce transmission errors.

- Use the following Extron XTP DTP 24 SF/UTP cables and connectors for the best performance:
  - XTP DTP 24/1000 Non-Plenum 1000 ' (305 m) spool 22-236-03
    - **XTP DTP 24P/1000** Plenum 1000 ' (305 m) spool 22-235-03
  - XTP DTP 24 Plug Package of 10 101-005-02
- If not using XTP DTP 24 cable, at a minimum, Extron recommends 24 AWG, solid conductor, STP cable with a minimum bandwidth of 400 MHz.
- Terminate cables with shielded connectors to the TIA/EIA-T568B standard.
- Limit the use of more than two pass-through points, which may include patch points, punch down connectors, couplers, and power injectors. If these pass-through points are required, use shielded couplers and punch down connectors.

**NOTE:** When using shielded twisted pair cable in bundles or conduits, consider the following:

- Do not exceed 40% fill capacity in conduits.
- Do not comb the cable for the first 20 meters, where cables are straightened, aligned, and secured in tight bundles.
- Loosely place cables and limit the use of tie wraps or hook-and-loop fasteners.
- Separate twisted pair cables from AC power cables.

# Operation

This section contains information on the front panel operation, on-screen display menu system, and reset modes of the scalers. Topics in this section include:

- Front Panel Overview
- Powering Up
- Input Selection
- On-Screen Menu System
- Front Panel Lockout (Executive Modes)
- Reset Modes

# **Front Panel Overview**

The scalers all have the same front panel features except for the IN1608 xi IPCP models, which include a set of LED indicators for the IPCP Pro control processor (see figure 22, **G**).



• **Output HDCP LEDs** — Light for the active output when it is HDCP-encrypted.

Menu and Enter buttons — Press the Menu button to enter or exit the on-screen menu system. Press the Enter button to select options from the on-screen menu system.

Navigation buttons — Press any of the four buttons to navigate the on-screen menu system or change values of adjustable features.

**F** Volume knob — Rotate this knob to adjust output, program (default), or mic volume.

**Volume LEDs** — Light in order from bottom to top according to the audio volume level. There are eight LED steps from 1% (-99 dB) to 99% (-1 dB). Every quarter turn of the volume knob equates to a one step increment (about 12.5%). When the volume is muted (0%), the bottom LED blinks. When the volume is at 100%, the top LED blinks.

G IPCP Pro 355 control processor LED indicators — Light to indicate the status of various settings and connections on the IPCP Pro 355 control processor (see the IPCP Pro Series User Guide at www.extron.com for more details).

# **Powering Up**

When power is applied to the scaler, the input 1 button blinks green. After a few seconds, all the input selection buttons light amber, then green while the input 1 button continues to blink. Finally, all buttons turn off except the selected input button, which remains lit.

# **Input Selection**

Press any of the input selection buttons on the front panel to select an input. The current active input lights as follows:

| Input Selection Button Lights |                 |  |  |  |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|--|--|--|
| Color Signal                  |                 |  |  |  |
| Amber                         | Audio and video |  |  |  |
| Green                         | Video only      |  |  |  |
| Red                           | Audio only      |  |  |  |

# **On-Screen Menu System**

The on-screen menu is used primarily for the initial setup of the device (for other methods of control, see **Control Methods** on page 7). The on-screen menu presents configuration options on a local monitor and can be adjusted with front panel controls.

**NOTE:** The on-screen menu has a fixed time-out of 60 seconds.

# **Front Panel Buttons**

- **Menu button** Press the **Menu** button to activate or exit the on-screen menu, deselect a submenu, or cancel a pending change.
- **Enter button** Press the **Enter** button to access the on-screen menu, select submenus, or submenu items, or to accept pending changes.
- Navigation buttons Press the ▲ (Up) button or the ▼ (Down) arrow button to navigate submenus or submenu items. Press the ▶ (Right) arrow button to access currently selected submenus or submenu items. Press the ◄ (Left) arrow button to exit currently selected submenus or submenu items. You can also use the navigation buttons to adjust settings according to specific setting directions.
- Input selection buttons Press any of the input selection buttons to change the selected input.

## **Menu Overview**

In the on-screen menu, the IP address and firmware version are displayed in the top border. The active input settings and output resolution are displayed in the bottom border. The on-screen menu contains nine submenus with various submenu items of adjustable settings or device information (see the table below).

| Submenus                   | Submenu Items     |                             |                         |  |                                   |                        |                     |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| Quick Setup                | Auto-Image        | Input Format                | EDID                    | Output<br>Resolution                             | Audio Mute                        | Test Pattern           | DHCP<br>Mode        | IP<br>Address           |
| User Presets               | Recall            | Save                        | Clear                   |  |                                   |                        |                     |                         |
| Picture<br>Controls        | Image<br>Position | Image Size                  | Brightness/<br>Contrast | Color/Tint                                       | Detail                            |                        |                     |                         |
| Input                      | Auto-Image        | Input Format                | Film Mode               | Start<br><b>H</b> orizontal/<br><b>V</b> ertical | Active<br>Horizontal/<br>Vertical | Total Pixels/<br>Phase | HDCP<br>Authorized  | EDID                    |
| Output                     | Resolution        | HDMI 1A<br>Format           | HDMI 1B<br>Format       | Out 1C<br>Format                                 | HDCP<br>Notification              |                        |                     |                         |
| Audio                      | Audio Mute        | Audio<br>Format             | Gain                    | Mic/Line<br>1: Gain/<br>Phantom                  | Mic/Line 2:<br>Gain/Phantom       | Mic/Line<br>Volume     | Program<br>Volume   | Output<br>1/2<br>Format |
| Advanced                   | Test Pattern      | Screen<br>Saver/<br>Timeout | Auto-Image              | Aspect Ratio                                     | Auto Memory                       | Overscan               | Auto Switch         | Factory<br>Reset        |
| Communication              | Remote<br>Port    | MAC<br>Address              | DHCP Mode               | IP Address                                       | Subnet Mask                       | Gateway                |                     |                         |
| Device Info<br>(Read Only) | Unit Name         | Firmware                    | Temperature             | Active Input<br>Details                          | Active Output<br>Details          | Detected<br>Displays   | RS-232<br>Insertion |                         |

**NOTE:** The Communication submenu is normally locked. Press and hold the Enter button for 10 seconds to unlock the submenu items.

## **Using the On-screen Menu**

| Extron Electronics<br>IN1608 xi | 192.168.254.254<br>FW 1.00              |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Quick Setup                     | Auto-Image<br>Press Enter to Auto Image |
| User Presets                    | Input 3: Input Format<br>HDMI           |
| Picture Controls                | Input 3: EDID<br>1920x1080 @60Hz        |
| Input                           | Output Resolution                       |
| Output                          | Audio Mute                              |
| Audio                           | On Test Battern                         |
| Advanced                        | Crop                                    |
| Communication                   | DHCP Mode<br>Off                        |
| Device Info                     | IP Address<br>192 . 168 .254 . 254      |
| Input 3<br>1920x1080 @ 60Hz     | Output Resolution<br>1920x1200 @ 60Hz   |

#### Figure 23. On-screen Menu Example

#### To open the on-screen menu:

- 1. Connect a display device to an HDMI output connector (see figure 11, B) on page 17).
- 2. Press the Menu or Enter button to open the on-screen menu.

#### To navigate the on-screen menu:

- 1. Press the ▲ and ▼ buttons to navigate the nine submenus. The **table** on the previous page shows the nine submenus and their submenu items.
- 2. Press the Enter or ► button to access the submenu items of the selected submenu.
- 3. Press the ▲ and ▼ buttons to navigate the available submenu items.
- 4. Press the Menu button to return to the list of submenus.

#### To adjust a submenu item:

- 1. Navigate to an adjustable submenu item and press the **Enter** or ▶ button to select the submenu item.
- Press the 

   and 

   buttons to adjust the setting or select a specific adjustable setting within the selected submenu item.

If the selected submenu item has multiple adjustable settings, press the  $\blacktriangle$  and  $\blacktriangledown$  buttons to select a value.

3. Press the **Enter** button to accept the new value.

Press the Menu button to cancel any pending changes.

#### To exit the on-screen menu:

From the list of submenus, hold the **Menu** button for 3 seconds to exit the on-screen menu, or wait for the menu to time out (approximately 1 minute).
## **Quick Setup Submenu**



#### Figure 24. Quick Setup Submenu

The Quick Setup submenu provides quick access to common input, output, and communication settings. This submenu contains the following items:

- Auto-Image Press the Enter button to perform a one-time Auto-Image to size and position the current input (see Auto-Image on page 32).
- Input Format Press the navigation buttons to select the desired video input format (see Input Format on page 33). The current input is displayed in the title of the submenu.
- Input EDID Press the navigation buttons to select a discrete EDID or match the output resolution (see EDID on page 33). The current input is displayed in the title of the submenu.
- **Output Resolution** Press the navigation buttons to select from a list of output resolutions and refresh rates (see **Resolution** on page 35). There are eight custom options, prefaced by C1 through C8. The default setting is 720p @ 60 Hz.
- Audio Mute Press the navigation buttons to globally mute or unmute the audio.
- **Test Pattern** Press the navigation buttons to select an available test pattern to display or to turn a test pattern off (see **Test Pattern** on page 39). The available test patterns are Crop, Alternating Pixels, Color Bars, Grayscale, Blue Mode, and Audio Test Pattern (pink noise). The default setting is Off.
- **DHCP Mode** Press the navigation buttons to enable or disable DHCP mode.
- **IP Address** Press the *◄* and *▶* buttons to change octets. Press the *▲* and *▼* buttons to change the value of a selected octet.

## **User Presets Submenu**



#### Figure 25. User Presets Submenu

The User Presets submenu manages user presets only (input presets are not available through the on-screen menu). User presets save the current picture control settings for the selected input for recall later or copy settings to other inputs. There are 16 user presets available per input. Press the **Input Selection** buttons to select an input.

**NOTE:** If a saved preset is not named, User Preset *nn* is assigned.

With the Save, Recall, or Clear submenu item selected, press the navigation buttons to select the desired preset to either save picture control settings, recall previously saved picture control settings, or clear a preset of saved settings.

User presets save the following settings:

- Brightness and contrast
- Color and tint
- Detail
- Image size and position
- Preset name

**NOTE:** To manage input presets, use SIS commands (see **Preset Commands** on page 67) or the internal web pages (see **Preset Management Page** on page 120).

## **Picture Controls Submenu**

| Extron Electronics<br>IN1608 xi | 192.168.254.254<br>FW 1.00              |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Quick Setup                     | ♦ H Image Position V<br>+00000 +00000 € |
| User Presets                    | H Image Size V<br>00000 00000           |
| Picture Controls                | Brightness Contrast                     |
| Input                           | Color Tint                              |
| Output                          | N/A N/A                                 |
| Audio                           | 064*                                    |
| Advanced                        |   |
| Communications                  |   |
| Device Info                     |   |
| Input 3<br>1920x1080 @ 60Hz     | Output Resolution<br>1920x1200 @ 60Hz   |

#### Figure 26. Picture Controls Submenu

The Picture Controls submenu adjusts picture settings.

- Image Position Press the 

   and 
   buttons to select the horizontal (H) or vertical (V) position of the image. Press the 
   and 

   buttons to adjust the value of the selected position.

- **Detail** Press the navigation buttons to adjust the detail of the image.

## **Input Submenu**

| Extron Electronics<br>IN1608 xi | 192.168.254.254<br>FW 1.00              |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Quick Setup                     | Auto Image<br>Press Enter to Auto-Image |
| User Presets                    | Input 3: Input Format<br>HDMI           |
| Picture Controls                | Input 3: Film Mode                      |
| Input                           | H Start V                               |
| Output                          | H Active V                              |
| Audio                           | 1920* 1080*                             |
| Advanced                        |   |
| Communications                  | Input 3: HDCP Authorized<br>On          |
| Device Info                     | Input 3: EDID<br>1920x1080 @Hz          |
| Input 3<br>1920x1080 @ 60Hz     | Output Resolution<br>1920x1200 @ 60Hz   |

#### Figure 27. Input Submenu (IN1608 xi)

The Input submenu adjusts the active input.

Auto-Image — Press the Enter button to execute an Auto-Image on the active input. Auto-Image updates active pixel, active lines, horizontal and vertical start, phase, horizontal and vertical image position, and horizontal and vertical image size settings.

For analog video sources with dark backgrounds or borders, adjust the Auto-Image threshold with SIS commands (see the **Auto-Image threshold value** commands on page 59). Raise the Auto-Image threshold to ignore potential extraneous sync pulses embedded in RGB signals. Lower the threshold to allow for more accurate sizing and centering on dark video sources (such as a dark PC desktop).

**NOTE:** The Auto-Image submenu is the same as the standard A SIS command. However, there are other Auto-Image options available through SIS commands (see the Auto-Image SIS commands on page 58) or PCS and the internal web pages (see Signal Sampling panel on page 99 or Size and Position Page on page 102). The options include to execute an Auto-Image and fill the output and to execute an Auto-Image and maintain the input aspect ratio. These commands ignore the current aspect mode setting, auto-image the input, and then apply Fill or Follow.

The following is performed during an Auto-Image when the aspect ratio is set to Fill:

- Horizontal and vertical image position return to 0.
- Horizontal and vertical image size match the current output resolution.

The following is performed during an Auto-Image when the aspect ratio is set to Follow:

• The horizontal and vertical image position and image size are set to maintain the native aspect of the input rate with regard to the current output resolution.

Set the aspect ratio on the Advanced submenu (see Aspect Ratio on page 39).

• **Input Format** — Press the navigation buttons to select an analog video input format for inputs 1 and 2. All other inputs are digital inputs for HDMI or DVI input signals. The following table shows the available formats for each input.

| Input 1          | Input 2          | Input 3           | Input 4           | Input 5           | Input 6           | Input 7 | Input 8 |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------|---------|
| RGB<br>(default) | RGB<br>(default) | HDMI<br>(default) | HDMI<br>(default) | HDMI<br>(default) | HDMI<br>(default) | DTP     | DTP     |
| YUV              | YUV              |                   |                   |                   |                   |         |         |
| RGBcvS           | RGBcvS           |                   |                   |                   |                   |         |         |
| S-Video          | S-Video          |                   |                   |                   |                   |         |         |
| Composite        | Composite        |                   |                   |                   |                   |         |         |

- Film Mode Press the navigation buttons to enable or disable film mode 3:2 and 2:2 detection on (auto detect mode).

**NOTE:** This setting is for **analog** inputs only. If the input is digital, the values are displayed as N/A and are not editable.

- Active Press the 

   and 
   buttons to select the horizontal (H) or vertical (V) active pixels. Press the 
   and 

   buttons to adjust the selected value (analog inputs only).
- Total Pixels and Phase Press the 

   and ▶ buttons to select either Total Pixels or Phase. Press the ▲ and ▼ buttons to adjust the selected value.

**NOTE:** This setting is for **analog** inputs only. If the input is digital, the values are displayed as N/A and are not editable.

 HDCP Authorized — Press the navigation buttons to enable or disable the HDCP Authorized feature. This feature determines if a digital input reports as an HDCP authorized sink to a source.

For source devices that require encryption, enable HDCP Authorized. If HDCP Authorized is disabled for sources that require encryption (for example, a Blu-ray player), the output is muted or a warning message is displayed.

Some source devices may encrypt their output even if the source material does not require HDCP encryption, preventing content from being displayed on a non-HDCP compliant display. Disable HDCP Authorized to allow the output of the scaler to remain unencrypted.

• **EDID** — Press the navigation buttons to select an EDID for the active input. Select a discrete EDID from a list of factory-supplied EDID or select **Match Output** to use the output resolution and refresh rate (see **Resolution** on page 35 for a full list of available resolution and refresh rates).

## **Output Submenu**



## Figure 28. Output Submenu

The **Output** submenu configures the output resolution, refresh rate, HDMI format, and HDCP notification.

| Resolution         | 23.98 Hz | 24 Hz                                | 25 Hz | 29.97 Hz | 30 Hz | 50 Hz | 59.94 Hz | 60 Hz | 75 Hz |
|--------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|-------|----------|-------|-------|----------|-------|-------|
| 640x480            |          |                                      |       |          |       | X     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 800x600            |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 852x480            |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1024x768           |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1024x852           |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1024x1024          |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1280x768           |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1280x800           |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1280x1024          |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1360x765           |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1360x768           |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1365x768           |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1366x768           |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1365x1024          |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1440x900           |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     | Х     |
| 1400x1050          |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     |       |
| 1600x900           |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     |       |
| 1680x1050          |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     |       |
| 1600x1200          |          |                                      |       |          |       | X     |          | Х     |       |
| 1920x1200          |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          | Х     |       |
| 480p               |          |                                      |       |          |       |       | Х        | Х     |       |
| 576p               |          |                                      |       |          |       | Х     |          |       |       |
| 720p*              |          |                                      | Х     | Х        | Х     | X     | Х        | X*    |       |
| 1080i              |          |                                      |       |          |       | X     | Х        | Х     |       |
| 1080p              | Х        | Х                                    | Х     | Х        | Х     | Х     | Х        | Х     |       |
| 2K (2048x1080)     | Х        | Х                                    | Х     | Х        | Х     | Х     | Х        | Х     |       |
| Custom 1 through 8 |          | For captured or uploaded EDID tables |       |          |       |       |          |       |       |

• **Resolution** — Press the navigation buttons to change the resolution and refresh rate from the select list. The following table shows the available resolution and refresh rates.

\*Default

**NOTE:** The eight custom, user-defined output rates default to 720p @ 60 Hz when no custom EDID is captured or uploaded.

- HDMI or TP Output Format After selecting HDMI 1A Format, HDMI 1B Format, or Out 1C Format from the list of submenu items, press the navigation buttons to set the output format. HDMI output format has three components:
  - Video format DVI or HDMI
  - Color space RGB 4:4:4, YUV 4:2:2, or YUV 4:4:4
  - Quantization range Full (Ø-255) or limited (16-235)

The following formats are available:

- Auto (based on display EDID) (default)
- DVI RGB 444
- HDMI RGB 444 Full
- HDMI RGB 444 Limited
- HDMI YUV 444 Full
- HDMI YUV 444 Limited
- HDMI YUV 422 Full
- HDMI YUV 422 Limited
- HDCP Notification Press the navigation buttons to enable or disable an HDCP compliance notification for when an HDCP-encrypted input is sent to a non-compliant display. If HDCP notification is enabled, the output displays a green screen. If HDCP notification is disabled, the output displays a black or muted screen.

#### **Audio Submenu**



Figure 29. Audio Submenu

The Audio submenu allows users to adjust audio settings. Extron recommends using the PCS or the internal web pages for initial audio configuration (see Audio Configuration Page on page 103 for more audio configuration details and tips).

- Audio Mute Press the navigation buttons to globally mute or unmute audio output.
- Audio Format Press the navigation buttons to select the audio input format. Analog
  inputs can only be set to Analog or None. All other inputs can accept all audio input
  formats.

| Audio Input<br>Format | Details  | Inputs |
|-----------------------|--|--------|
| None                  | Mutes audio for the selected input. Sets No audio EDID.  | All    |
| Analog                | Sets the selected input to analog. Sets No audio EDID. Default for inputs 1 and 2.   | All    |
| LPCM-2Ch              | Sets the selected input to LPCM-2Ch audio.<br>Sets 2Ch audio EDID.   | 3-8    |
| Multi-Ch              | Sets the selected input to Multi-Ch audio. Sets Multi-Ch audio EDID.   | 3-8    |
| LPCM-2Ch Auto         | Sets the selected input to prioritize digital audio. Analog<br>audio is passed when digital is not present. Sets 2Ch<br>audio EDID.<br>Default for inputs 3 through 8. | 3-8    |
| Multi-Ch Auto         | Sets the selected input to prioritize digital audio. Analog<br>audio is passed when digital is not present.<br>Sets Multi-Ch audio EDID.                               | 3-8    |

**NOTE:** Multi-channel audio does not include microphone inputs or audio processing when it is sent to the output. It is also unaffected by volume control.

- **Gain** Press the navigation buttons to set the gain (in dB) for the active analog or LPCM-2Ch input.
- **Mic/Line Gain and Phantom** After selecting **Mic/Line 1** or **Mic/Line 2** from the list of submenu items, press the **Left** and **Right** buttons to select the Mic/Line gain or phantom power status. Press the **Up** and **Down** buttons to set the gain (in dB) or enable or disable phantom power for the selected value.
- Mic/Line Volume Press the navigation buttons to set the Mic/Line mix volume (in dB).
- Program Volume Press the navigation buttons to set the Program mix volume (in dB).
- **Output 1/2 Format** Press the navigation buttons to set the audio output format.

## **Advanced Submenu**

| Extron Electronics<br>IN1608 xi | 192.168.254.254<br>FW 1.00              |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Quick Setup                     | Test Pattern<br>Crop                    |
| User Presets                    | ◆ Screen Saver Timeout<br>Black Never ◆ |
| Picture Controls                | Input 3: Auto-Image<br>On               |
| Input                           | Input 3: Aspect Ratio                   |
| Output                          | Input 3: Auto Memory                    |
| Audio                           | Overscan                                |
| Advanced                        | RGB 2.5%                                |
| Communications                  | Auto Switch<br>High to Low              |
| Device Info                     | Factory Reset<br>Hold Enter             |
| Input 3<br>1920x1080 @ 60Hz     | Output Resolution<br>1920x1200 @ 60Hz   |

#### Figure 30. Advanced Submenu

The Advanced submenu adjusts of test patterns, screen saver mode, automatic Auto-Image, aspect ratio, auto memory, overscan settings, auto switch, and factory reset.

• **Test Pattern** — Press the navigation buttons to select a test pattern to display or to turn off a test pattern. The available test patterns are Crop, Alternating Pixels, Color Bars, Grayscale, Blue Mode, and Audio Test (pink noise). The default setting is Off.



Figure 31. Available Test Patterns

| NC | NOTES: |   |  |  |  |
|----|--------|---|--|--|--|
|    | •      | The audio test outputs pink noise on the embedded digital audio output (2-channel, 48 kHz, 16 bit). |  |  |  |
|    | •      | All test patterns include a single pixel border (except Blue mode).                                 |  |  |  |
|    | •      | All test patterns remain enabled after a power cycle.   |  |  |  |

Screen Saver and Timeout — Press the ◄ and ➤ buttons to select the screen saver setting or duration the screen saver remains active before sync is disabled. Press the ▲ and ▼ buttons to either set the screen saver to a black (default), blue, or custom color (see the Screen saver SIS commands on page 65 to specify a custom color) screen or to set the screen saver time-out duration to a specified number of seconds.

When there is no active video on the selected input, the device can mute the video output to black, blue, or a custom color for a set duration before disabling output sync. By default, the scaler outputs black video and sync (no sync time-out) with no active input applied. The time-out duration can be set to any duration from 0-500 seconds.

• **Auto-Image** — Press the navigation buttons to turn the automatic per-input Auto-Image mode on or off (default).

When enabled and a new input frequency is detected, the scaler first applies an existing Auto Memory for the signal (if Auto Memory is enabled). If no entry exists, it performs an automatic Auto-Image on the new signal. This sets a size and position for the image to fill the screen, with respect to the current Aspect Ratio setting.

By default, the Auto-Image threshold is 25% brightness. Analog video signals greater than the threshold are considered active video. To change the threshold value, use SIS commands (see the **Auto-Image Threshold Value** commands on page 59).

• Aspect Ratio — Press the navigation buttons to set the aspect ratio setting of the active input to Fill (default) or Follow.

When in fill mode, all inputs automatically fill the entire output. To adjust an aspect ratio for a single input rate, set the desired size and center in the **Picture Controls** submenu (see **Picture Controls Submenu** on page 31). If auto memory is enabled, these settings are saved and recalled the next time the signal is detected.

In follow mode, each input rate is displayed with its native aspect ratio mode with the correct letter box or pillar box settings visible.

The scaler clears the previous size and position settings whenever the aspect ratio setting for an input is adjusted.

• Auto Memory — Press the navigation buttons to turn Auto Memory on or off for each input. The scaler stores 32 auto memories per input, with input configuration and picture control data for each video resolution. The default setting enables these memories to automatically recall input and picture controls for previously applied signals. When auto memories are disabled, the scaler treats every applied signal as a new source.

| Auto Memory and Auto-Image Interaction |               |  |  |  |
|--|---------------|--|--|--|
| Auto Memory                            | Auto-Image    | Information  |  |  |
| On                                     | On            | New signals and rates not previously detected by the scaler, are initially set up using default parameters, then Auto-Image is automatically applied. The next time the signal is detected, the values stored in the auto memory location are applied.   |  |  |
| On (default)                           | Off (default) | New signals and rates not been previously detected<br>by the scaler, are set up using default parameters. If<br>manual input or picture settings are made to the input,<br>an auto memory location is created and recalled each<br>time the input is detected.   |  |  |
| Off                                    | On            | Each change in input sync, input switch, or power<br>cycle triggers an automatic Auto-Image. When auto<br>memory is disabled, each change in sync is treated as<br>a new signal and an automatic Auto-Image is triggered.<br>Manual changes made to the image and picture controls<br>are lost each time a new rate is detected. |  |  |
| Off                                    | Off           | Each change in input sync causes default values to be<br>applied. Manual changes made to the image and picture<br>controls are lost when a new rate is applied, a new input<br>is applied, or after a power cycle.   |  |  |

 Overscan — Press the navigation buttons to select the overscan value for each input format. Choose between 0%, 2.5%, or 5%. Set default overscan mode through SIS commands (see the Overscan mode SIS commands on page 70).

Overscan is specific to each input signal type. This feature zooms and crops SMPTE input resolutions to mask edge effects and ancillary data that are common in broadcast signals. When the overscan mode is not at 0%, an Auto-Image on a SMPTE input rate (NTSC, PAL, SECAM, 480p, 576p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p, and 2K [2048x1080]) refers to the default input lookup table values instead of performing a true auto image.

**NOTE:** Overscan is valid only on SMPTE input rates (NTSC, PAL, 480p, 576p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p, or 2K [2048x1080]) and is global for each video format.

- Auto Switch Press the navigation buttons to turn the auto-input switching mode on or off, and to set the priority. The Auto Switch setting allows for basic, unmanaged, input switching based on the presence of active input signals. Auto Switch options are:
  - Disabled (off)
  - Setting priority to "high to low" (highest numbered active input to the lowest)
  - Setting priority to "low to high" (lowest numbered active input to the highest)
- **Factory Reset** Press and hold the **Enter** button to reset the device to factory defaults. The scaler retains the current firmware version, as well as communication and IP settings.

## **Communication Submenu**

| Extron Electronics<br>IN1608 ×i | 192.168.254.254<br>FW 1.00                 |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Quick Setup                     | Remote Port<br>9600 RS232                  |
| User Presets                    | MAC Address<br>00 : 05 : A6 : 00 : 03 : 24 |
| Picture Controls                | DHCP Mode<br>Off                           |
| Input                           | IP Address                                 |
| Output                          | 192 . 168 . 254 . 254                      |
| Audio                           | 255.255.0.0                                |
| Advanced                        | Gateway<br>192 . 168 . 000 . 001           |
| Communication                   |  |
| Device Info                     |  |
| Input 3<br>1920x1080 @ 60Hz     | Output Resolution<br>1920x1200 @ 60Hz      |

#### Figure 32. Communication Submenu

The **Communication** submenu displays RS-232 settings, current IP configuration (DHCP mode, IP address, Subnet mask, and Gateway address), and MAC address.

Press and hold the **Enter** button for 10 seconds to edit the submenu items listed below.

- **Remote Port** Displays the baud rate for the serial RS-232.
- **MAC Address** Displays the MAC address of the device (read only).
- DHCP Mode Press the navigation buttons to turn the DHCP mode on or off. The default is 0ff.
- IP Address Press the 

   and 
   buttons to select an octet of the IP address.

   Press the 

   and ▼ buttons to adjust the value of the selected octet. The default is 192.168.254.254.

## **Device Info Submenu**

| Extron Electronics<br>IN1608 xi | 192.168.254.254<br>FW 1.00  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| Quick Setup                     | Unit Name: IN1608-xi-AA-AA-AA<br>Firmware: 1.00.0001  |  |  |  |
| User Presets                    | Temp: 28.0C 82.4F   |  |  |  |
| Picture Controls                | Input 5: HDMI 1920x1080<br>* 45.01kHz 60.01kHz<br>* Total Lines 1125<br>Output:2048x1080 @ 60Hz<br>* Format 1A: HDMI RGB 444 Full |  |  |  |
| Input                           |   |  |  |  |
| Output                          | * Format 1B: No Display<br>* Format 1C: No Display  |  |  |  |
| Audio                           | Detected Displays<br>* 1A 3840x2160 @ 30Hz (PHL)<br>* 1B No Display   |  |  |  |
| Advanced                        | * 1C No Display<br>* Mode DTP   |  |  |  |
| Communications                  | RS-232 Insertion<br>In7 In8 Out1C<br>Captive Screw Captive Screw  |  |  |  |
| Device Info                     |   |  |  |  |
| Input 3<br>1920x1080 @ 60Hz     | Output Resolution<br>1920x1200 @ 60Hz   |  |  |  |

#### Figure 33. Device Info Submenu

The **Device Info** submenu displays device information including unit name, firmware version, internal temperature, input and output signal information, detected display information, and RS-232 Insertion status. This submenu does not contain any adjustable submenu items.

## Front Panel Lockout (Executive Modes)

The scalers have three modes of front panel security lock that limit the operation of the device from the front panel.

- Mode 0 Unlocks front panel functions. This is the default setting.
- Mode 1 Locks all front panel functions. Pressing the Menu button in this mode causes the message Executive Mode 1 Enabled to appear on the display. This mode can be enabled or disabled by SIS commands (see the Front Panel Lockout mode commands on page 69) and via PCS (see the IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help file). All functions performed via USB, RS-232, or Ethernet remain available).
- Mode 2 Locks all front panel functions except input switching and volume control. Pressing the Menu button in this mode causes the message Executive Mode 2 Enabled to appear on the display. All functions performed via USB, RS-232, or Ethernet remain available.

To enable executive mode 2, press and hold the **Menu** and **Enter** buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. This mode can be enabled or disabled by SIS commands (see the **Front Panel Lockout mode** commands) and via PCS (see the *IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help* file).

The menu system returns to the default menu within 10 seconds.

## **Reset Modes**

The IN1608 xi series have three reset modes (numbered 1, 4, and 5). These resets are available by pressing the recessed **Reset** button on the rear panel (see A in the image at right). See the Reset Mode Summary table for a description of the reset modes.

You can also perform resets using SIS commands (see the **Reset commands** on page 72) and PCS (see the *IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help* file).



🛕 IN1608 xi SA

#### ATTENTION:

- Review the reset modes carefully. Using the wrong reset mode may result in unintended loss of flash memory programming, port reassignment, or processor reboot.
- Étudier de près les différents modes de réinitialisation. Appliquer le mauvais mode de réinitialisation peut causer une perte inattendue de la programmation de la mémoire flash, une reconfiguration des ports ou une réinitialisation du processeur.

**NOTE:** The reset modes listed close all open IP and Telnet connections and all sockets. Each mode is a separate function, not a continuation from mode 1 to mode 5.

|                      |    |  | eset Mode Summary  |   |
|----------------------|----|--|--|---|
| Mod                  | le | Activation   | Result   | Purpose/Notes   |
| are                  | 1  | Using an Extron Tweeker or other small<br>screwdriver, press and hold in the<br>recessed <b>Reset</b> button for 30 seconds<br>while applying power to the scaler.                           | <ul> <li>The device reverts to the factory default firmware.</li> <li>Firmware reverts to the factory default for a single power cycle.</li> </ul>   | Use mode 1 to revert<br>to the factory default<br>version if incompatibility<br>issues arise with             |
| story Firmw          |    | <b>NOTE:</b> After a mode 1 reset,<br>update the device with the latest<br>firmware version. <b>DO NOT</b><br>operate with the firmware version  | <ul> <li>All user files and settings (drivers, audio<br/>and video adjustments, IP settings, and<br/>so on) are maintained.</li> </ul>   | USEI-IUaueu miniware.   |
| Use Fac              |    | that results from this mode reset.<br>This temporarily resets the device<br>to factory default until power is<br>recycled. To use factory default<br>firmware, upload that version<br>again. | <b>NOTE:</b> If you do not want to update the firmware or perform a mode 1 reset by mistake, cycle power to the device to return to the firmware version running prior to the reset.   |   |
| Reset IP<br>Settings | 4  | Hold down the <b>Reset</b> button until the<br>Reset LED blinks twice (approximately<br>6 seconds). Then, press <b>Reset</b><br>momentarily (less than 1 second).                            | <ul> <li>IP settings revert to factory defaults.</li> <li>Port mapping reverts to factory default.</li> <li>DHCP turns off.</li> <li>IP address is set to 192.168.254.254.</li> <li>Reset LED blinks four times in quick succession during reset.</li> </ul> | Use mode 4 to reset<br>all IP settings back to<br>factory defaults.   |
| ry Default           | 5  | Hold down the <b>Reset</b> button<br>until the Power LED blinks 3 times<br>(approximately 9 seconds). Then,<br>press <b>Reset</b> momentarily (less than<br>1 second).                       | <ul> <li>The device reverts to the factory defaults except for firmware.</li> <li>Mode 4 results are performed.</li> <li>All user modifiable configurations reset to</li> </ul>  | Use mode 5 to<br>restart with default<br>configuration. This<br>is equivalent to SIS<br>command <b>ZQQQ</b> . |
| Reset to Facto       |    |  | <ul> <li>default values including IP settings and real-time adjustments.</li> <li>All user loaded files are deleted.</li> <li>The Reset LED blinks 4 times in quick succession during the reset.</li> </ul>  | <b>NOTE:</b> This reset<br>also removes<br>the all existing<br>passwords and<br>sets them to no<br>password.  |

## **RS-232 Insertion**

The twisted pair input and output ports allow you to insert RS-232 control signals onto the same cable that carries video and audio to extend them to the Over TP port on a connected endpoint (see **figure 34** on the next page and **figure 35** on page 46). The control signals can be inserted two ways:

- Ethernet to RS-232 insertion (see "Ethernet to RS-232 Insertion," below) A control signal applied to the IN1608 xi LAN port can be routed to the RS-232 port of any connected twisted pair device.
- Captive screw insertion (see Captive Screw Signal Insertion on page 46) A control signal applied to an RS-232 captive screw port is tied directly to the same-numbered TP port. RS-232 input port 7 is tied to TP port 7 *only*, and 8 is tied to 8.

You must physically connect a cable connected to the captive screw connector where a control signal is to be inserted.

The insert inputs and outputs, whether inserted via Ethernet or captive screw connectors, can support up to a 115K baud rate.

## **Enabling Ethernet and Captive Screw Insertion**

For a DTP port to distribute the inserted signal, it must be enabled for either Ethernet insertion or captive screw insertion (default). Use one of the following methods to make this selection:

- Product Configuration Software (see the IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help file)
- SIS commands (see the Ethernet to RS-232 Insertion Parameters SIS commands, beginning on page 75)
- Internal web pages (see RS-232 Insertion panel (inputs 7 and 8 and output 1C only) on page 124)

## **Ethernet to RS-232 Insertion**

**Figure 34** on the next page is an example of a typical Ethernet to RS-232 insertion, in which an Extron IPCP module provides control of an HD camera via the IN1608 xi and a DTP HDMI 4K 230 transmitter.

Configure this type of insertion as follows:

- 1. Connect a TP cable from the IPCP module to the LAN port, directly or via a network.
- **2.** If necessary, enable the port (input port 7 in this example) for Ethernet (see "Enabling Ethernet and Captive Screw Insertion").
- **3.** If necessary to match the device to be controlled, configure the port RS-232 protocol (baud rate, parity, data bits, and stop bits) (see **RS-232 protocol** on page 46).
- 4. Connect the TP cable to the endpoint as usual.
- 5. Connect a serial cable from the endpoint to the device to be controlled.





## **Port number**

For Ethernet to RS-232 insertion, the insertion port number must be stated from a specific starting point. This number is entered as the Telnet port number when you establish communication with the insertion port.

For the purposes of this discussion, consider the Ethernet insertion ports as serial (RS-232) ports. The rear panel Over DTP RS-232 port, both input ports, and the output serial port on the scaler are numbered sequentially (see the table below for the port default numbers).

| Input<br>Port | Insertion<br>Port | Output<br>Port | Insertion<br>Port |
|---------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 7             | 2001              | 1C             | 2003              |
| 8             | 2002              |                |                   |

## Changing the starting point

By default the starting port number is 2001. You can change the starting port number by any of the following methods:

- Using the Product Configuration Software (see IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help file)
- Using SIS commands (see the Set UART starting point SIS command on page 77)
- Using the internal web page (see Insertion port on page 125)

## **RS-232 protocol**

You also may need to set the RS-232 protocol of the addressed port to match the connected device. You can do this using any of the following methods:

- Using the Product Configuration Software (see the *IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help* file).
- Using SIS commands (see the **Configure Serial Port** SIS commands on page 76).
- Using the internal web page (see Baud Rate, Data Bits, Stop Bits, and Parity on page 125.

## **Captive Screw Signal Insertion**

Figure 35 is an example of a typical captive screw insertion, in which an Extron IPCP module provides control of a Blu-ray player via the scaler. Configure this type of insertion as follows:

**NOTE:** Each captive screw insert is for the associated input or output only and cannot be tied to any other input or output.

- 1. Connect an RS-232 cable from the IPCP module to the RS-232 captive screw port (input port 8 in this example).
- 2. If necessary, enable the port for captive screw (see **Enabling Ethernet and Captive Screw Insertion**, on page 44).

The RS-232 control signal is inserted directly onto the TP port of the same number and cannot be tied to any other port.

- **3.** Connect the TP cable to the endpoint as usual.
- 4. Connect a serial cable from the endpoint to the device to be controlled.



Figure 35. Typical Captive Screw Insertion to an Input Endpoint

# SIS Configuration and Control

The scaler can be configured and controlled with Extron Simple Instruction Set (SIS) commands when connected to a host computer or other device (such as a control system). Attach the host device to the rear panel RS-232 connector, the LAN port, or the front panel USB port. Commands can be entered using a Telnet application such as the Extron DataViewer, available at **www.extron.com** (see the *DataViewer Help* file for more details). This section describes SIS communication and control. Topics in this section include:

- Host and Scaler Communication
- SIS Overview
- Command and Response Table

The scaler uses a protocol of 9600 baud, one stop bit, eight data bits, no parity, and no flow control (see **Remote RS-232 connector** on page 20).

## **Host and Scaler Communication**

SIS commands consist of one or more characters per field. No special characters are required to begin or end a command sequence. When the scaler determines that a command is valid, it executes the command and sends a response to the host device. All responses from the scaler to the host end with a carriage return and a line feed  $(CR/LF = \blacktriangleleft)$ , indicating the end of the response character string (one or more characters).

## **Scaler-Initiated Messages**

When a local event such as a front panel selection or adjustment takes place, the scaler responds by sending a message to the host. No response is required from the host. Example scaler-initiated messages are listed here.

- In x All ← (where x is the input number during an input switch).
- Reconfig 
   The scaler sends this response when an input is switched or when a new signal is detected.
- Hp1g0 x₂ ← The scaler sends this response when a hot plug event on output x₂ is detected.

#### **Copyright Information**

The copyright message is displayed upon connecting to a scaler via TCP/IP or Telnet or after a power cycle via RS-232 and depends on the scaler model.

← © Copyright YYYY, Extron Electronics, IN16Ø8 xi <model>, Vn.n, 6Ø-nnnn-nn←

Ddd, DD MMM YYYY HH:MM:SS ← (day, date, and time as in Mon, 18 May 2017 11:27:33)

Vn. nn is the firmware version number.6Ø-nnnn-nn is the model part number.YYYY is the year.

## **Password Information**

The - Password: prompt is displayed after the copyright messages and requires a password (administrator level or user level) followed by a carriage return.

#### NOTES:

- The factory configured passwords for all accounts on these devices have been set to the device serial number. Passwords are case sensitive.
- Performing a unit factory reset (entering an Esc ZQQQ ← SIS command [see page 72] or a mode 5 reset via the rear panel **Reset** button [see page 43]) resets the serial number passwords to **no password**.

If the correct password is entered, the unit responds with *Login Administrator* or *Login User*, depending on the password entered. If passwords are the same for both administrator and user, the switcher defaults to administrator privileges.

**NOTE:** The password prompt is redisplayed if an incorrect password is entered.

#### **Error Responses**

When the scaler receives a valid command, it executes the command and sends a response to the host device. If the unit is unable to execute the command, it returns an error response to the host.

#### **Error codes**

EØ1 – Invalid input number

EØ6 – Invalid input channel change

**NOTE:** Auto-Switch mode is active.

- E1Ø Invalid command
- E11 Invalid preset number
- E12 Invalid port number
- E13 Invalid parameter

- E14 Not valid for this configuration
- E17 Invalid command for signal type
- E22 Busy
- E24 Privilege violation
- E25 Device not present
- E26 Maximum number of connections exceeded
- E28 Bad filename or file not found

#### **Error response references**

These references in the command and response tables note particular error responses to that command.

- <sup>14</sup> = Commands that give an E14 (invalid command for this configuration) error if sent to a product whose current configuration does not support the command
- <sup>24</sup> = Commands that give an E24 (privilege violation) error if not administrator level
- <sup>28</sup> = Commands that may give an E28 (file not found) error

## **SIS Overview**

## Using the Command and Response Table

The **Command and Response Table** for SIS commands beginning on page 57 lists the commands that the scaler recognizes as valid, the responses that are returned to the host, a description of the command function or the results of executing the command, and examples of commands in ASCII (Telnet).

**NOTE:** Unless otherwise stated, the commands are not case-sensitive.

|         |   |    |      |    |    |     |     |                  |     |    | _   |    |    |    |     |    |
|---------|---|----|------|----|----|-----|-----|------------------|-----|----|-----|----|----|----|-----|----|
|         | A | SC | l to | He | хC | onv | ers | ion <sup>-</sup> | Tab | le | Esc | 1B | CR | ØD | LF  | ØA |
| Space — | • | 2Ø | !    | 21 | "  | 22  | #   | 23               | \$  | 24 | %   | 25 | &  | 26 | 4   | 27 |
|         | ( | 28 | )    | 29 | *  | 2A  | ÷   | 2B               | ,   | 2C | -   | 2D | •  | 2E | 1   | 2F |
|         | Ø | 3Ø | 1    | 31 | 2  | 32  | 3   | 33               | 4   | 34 | 5   | 35 | 6  | 36 | 7   | 37 |
|         | 8 | 38 | 9    | 39 | :  | 3A  | ;   | 3B               | <   | 3C | =   | 3D | >  | 3E | ?   | 3F |
|         | @ | 4Ø | А    | 41 | В  | 42  | С   | 43               | D   | 44 | Е   | 45 | F  | 46 | G   | 47 |
|         | Н | 48 | 1    | 49 | J  | 4A  | Κ   | 4B               | L   | 4C | М   | 4D | Ν  | 4E | 0   | 4F |
|         | Ρ | 5Ø | Q    | 51 | R  | 52  | S   | 53               | Т   | 54 | U   | 55 | V  | 56 | W   | 57 |
|         | Х | 58 | Y    | 59 | Ζ  | 5A  | [   | 5B               | \   | 5C | ]   | 5D | ^  | 5E | _   | 5F |
|         | ` | 6Ø | а    | 61 | b  | 62  | C   | 63               | d   | 64 | е   | 65 | f  | 66 | g   | 67 |
|         | h | 68 | i.   | 69 | j  | 6A  | k   | 6B               | 1   | 6C | m   | 6D | n  | 6E | 0   | 6F |
|         | р | 7Ø | q    | 71 | r  | 72  | s   | 73               | t   | 74 | u   | 75 | v  | 76 | w   | 77 |
|         | X | 78 | y    | 79 | z  | 7A  | {   | 7B               |     | 7C | }   | 7D | ~  | 7E | Del | 7F |



## **Symbol Definitions**

- = Space
- Carriage return with line feed
- Carriage return with no line feed
- = Pipe (vertical bar) character
- Esc or W = Escape key
  - <sup>14, 24, 28</sup> = Superscripts indicate the error message displayed if the command is entered incorrectly or with invalid parameters (see **Error response references** on the previous page).

| X1         | = | Input selection                     | 1 - 8   |
|------------|---|-------------------------------------|---|
| X2         | = | Output selection                    | <ol> <li>1 = Output 1A – HDMI (top connector)</li> <li>2 = Output 1B – HDMI (bottom connector)</li> <li>3 = Output 1C – DTP/HDBT</li> </ol>   |
| <b>X</b> 3 | = | Input video format                  | <ol> <li>RGB (default for inputs 1 and 2)</li> <li>= YUV</li> <li>= RGBcvS</li> <li>= S-video</li> <li>= Composite</li> <li>= HDMI (default for inputs 3 and higher)</li> </ol>   |
|            |   |                                     | Options 3-5 are valid for inputs 1 and 2 only.  |
| <b>X</b> 4 | = | Horizontal or vertical start        | $\emptyset$ -255 (default midpoint of 128 translates to the default value in the input lookup tables)   |
| X5         | = | Pixel phase                         | Ø-63 (31 = default)   |
| X6         | = | Total pixels                        | $\pm 512$ of the default value  |
| X7         | = | Active pixels                       | $\pm 512$ of the default value  |
| X8         | = | Active lines                        | $\pm 256$ of the default value  |
| <b>X</b> 9 | = | Enable or disable                   | $\emptyset$ = off or disabled<br>1 = on or enabled  |
| <u>X10</u> | = | Input standard                      | <ul> <li>Ø = no signal detected on the current<br/>input</li> <li>1 = NTSC 3.85</li> <li>2 = PAL</li> <li>3 = NTSC 4.43</li> <li>4 = SECAM</li> <li>- = N/A (occurs when the input is active RGB,<br/>YUV, or HDMI signal)</li> </ul> |
| X11        | = | Internal temperature                | In degrees Celsius  |
| X12        | = | Film detect mode                    | $\emptyset$ = disabled<br>1 = auto (default)  |
| <u>X13</u> | = | Horizontal and vertical frequencies | nnn . n   |
| X14        | = | Text label                          | Host names:   |
|            |   |                                     | Up to 63 characters   |
|            |   |                                     | <ul> <li>Only alphanumeric characters, the<br/>underscore (_), and the hyphen (-) can be<br/>used.</li> </ul>   |
|            |   |                                     | • The first character must be a letter.   |
|            |   |                                     | • The last character <b>cannot</b> be a hyphen.   |
|            |   |                                     | Input and preset names:   |
|            |   |                                     | Up to 24 characters (can be any ASCII   |
|            |   |                                     | human-readable characters)  |
| X 15       | = | Picture adjustment                  | $\wp - 127 (64 = Gerauit)$  |
| X16        | = |                                     | ±2048   |
| X17        | = | ventical position                   |   |
| X 18       | = |                                     | 10,02400  |
| IX 191     | = | VEILICAI SIZE                       | עע+2ע-טו  |

X19

| <u>X20</u> | = | Test patterns  | <ul> <li>Ø = off (default)</li> <li>1 = crop</li> <li>2 = alternating pixels</li> <li>3 = color bars</li> <li>4 = grayscale</li> <li>5 = blue mode</li> <li>6 = audio test pattern (pink noise)</li> </ul>  |
|------------|---|--|---|
| X21        | = | User presets   | Ø1-16   |
| X22        | = | Input presets  | 1-128   |
| X23        | = | On-screen display bug<br>time-out Output sync time-<br>out | <ul> <li>Ø = OSD is never displayed, output sync is instantly disabled with no active input</li> <li>1-5ØØ = 1 second increments</li> <li>3 = OSD bug time-out default</li> <li>5Ø1 = OSD bug never times out, output sync never times out</li> </ul>   |
| <u>X24</u> | = | Front panel lockout<br>(executive mode) status             | <ul> <li>Ø = off or disabled (default)</li> <li>1 = mode 1 (complete front panel lockout)</li> <li>2 = mode 2 (only allow input switching and volume control)</li> </ul>  |
| <u>X25</u> | = | Overscan   | $\emptyset$ = 0.0% (default for RGB, HDMI)<br>1 = 2.5% (default for RGBcvS, YUV, S-video,<br>and CV)<br>2 = 5.0%  |
| X26        | = | Aspect ratio setting                                       | 1 = fill (default)<br>2 = follow  |
| X27        | = | Screen saver mode  | Ø = custom color<br>1 = black output (default)<br>2 = blue output   |
| X28        | = | Custom screen saver color                                  | ØØØØØØ (black) to FFFFFF (white) in HTML style<br>hexadecimal values (for example, FFØØØØ = red,<br>ØØFFØØ = green, and ØØØØFF = blue)  |
| X29        | = | Video output mute  | Ø = unmute<br>1 = mute video<br>2 = mute video and sync   |
| X30        | = | Auto-Image threshold value                                 | Ø - 1ØØ (where Ø = black and $1ØØ$ = white;<br>Ø25 = default)   |
| X31        | = | HDCP status  | <ul> <li>Ø = no sink or source device detected</li> <li>1 = sink or source detected with HDCP</li> <li>2 = sink or source detected but no HDCP</li> </ul>   |
| X32        | = | Video switching effect                                     | $\emptyset$ = cut<br>1 = fade to black (default)  |
| X33        | = | HDMI output format   | <ul> <li>Ø = auto (based on the display EDID: default)</li> <li>1 = DVI RGB 444</li> <li>2 = HDMI RGB 444 "Full"</li> <li>3 = HDMI RGB 444 "Limited"</li> <li>4 = HDMI YUV 444 "Full"</li> <li>5 = HDMI YUV 444 "Limited"</li> <li>6 = HDMI YUV 422 "Full"</li> <li>7 = HDMI YUV 422 "Limited"</li> </ul> |

| X34        | = | Default name                 | A combination of model name and the last three pairs of the device MAC address (for example, IN1608-xi-07-8C-EC)  |
|------------|---|------------------------------|---|
| <u>X35</u> | = | Audio input format           | <ul> <li>Ø = none (input muted)</li> <li>1 = analog (default for inputs 1 and 2)</li> <li>2 = LPCM-2Ch digital (default for inputs 3 and higher)</li> <li>3 = Multi-Ch digital</li> <li>4 = LPCM-2Ch digital auto</li> <li>5 = Multi-Ch digital auto</li> </ul> |
| X36        | = | Video signal status          | Ø = video or HDMI signal not detected<br>1 = video or HDMI signal detected  |
| X37        | = | Power save mode              | Ø = full power mode (default)<br>1 = lower power state  |
| X38        | = | Screen saver status          | <ul> <li>Ø = active input detected, timer not running</li> <li>1 = no active input, timer running, output sync still active</li> <li>2 = no active input, timer expired, output sync disabled</li> </ul>  |
| X39        | = | HDCP authorization status    | Ø = block HDCP encryption<br>1 = allow HDCP encryption (default)  |
| X40        | = | IP address                   | <i>xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx</i><br>(192.168.254.254 = default)   |
| X41        | = | Subnet mask                  | xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (255.255.Ø.Ø = default)   |
| X42        | = | Gateway address              | xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (Ø.Ø.Ø.Ø.Ø = default)   |
| X43        | = | MAC address                  | ØØ-Ø5-A6- <i>xx-xx-xx</i>   |
| X44        | = | Number of open connections   | Ø- <maximum connections="" number="" of="" open=""></maximum>   |
| X45        | = | Config type                  | Ø = IP config<br>1 = device-specific parameters   |
| X46        | = | Volume group number          | <ol> <li>1 = program volume</li> <li>3 = mic volume</li> <li>8 = variable volume</li> </ol>   |
| X47        | = | Group volume level           | -1000 to 0, where -1000 = -100 dB or<br>0% volume and $0 = 0$ dB or 100% volume   |
| X48        | = | Mute group number            | 2 = program mute<br>4 = mic mute<br>7 = output mute   |
| X49        | = | Bass and treble group number | 5 = bass control<br>6 = treble control  |
| X50        | = | Bass and treble level        | - 240 to +120, where -240 = -24 dB and +120 = 12 dB   |
| X51        | = | Increment value              | dB value multiplied by ten, in 0.1 dB increments, to raise or lower a group fader (for example, $100 = 10 \text{ dB}$ )   |

| <u>X52</u> | = | Password Up to 128 characters for user or admin passwords.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|            |   | <ul> <li>NOTES:</li> <li>/ \   * and space</li> <li>The factory configue been set to the devent of a repassword.</li> </ul>   | ee are invalid characters.<br>ared passwords for all accounts on this device have<br>vice serial number. Passwords are case sensitive.<br>set to factory defaults, the passwords are set to no   |  |  |  |  |  |
| X53        | = | Verbose mode  | <ul> <li>Ø = clear or none (default for Telnet connections)</li> <li>1 = verbose mode (default for RS-232 and USB)</li> <li>2 = tagged responses for queries</li> <li>3 = verbose mode and tagged for queries</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |  |  |
|            |   | <ul> <li>In verbose responses from a signal change interface.</li> <li>For example, the s setting without rece change could have made via the PCS relationship betweet</li> <li>If tagged responses command string plus For example, for the Command: Im Response: Typ Im sor Im 4</li> </ul> | verbose response mode, the IN1608 xi responds with solicited responses for value and setting changes that may result m a signal change, or a setting adjustment made via another erface.<br>r example, the scaler can send out a notice of a change in some ting without receiving a query via a PC or a control system. That ange could have been a result of an internal process or a selection ade via the PCS program. This is an example of a verbose (wordy) ationship between the controller and a connected device.<br>agged responses are enabled, all "view" commands return the mmand string plus the data, the same as in responses for setting a value.<br>r example, for the following View Video Input Format command:<br>sponse: Typ X1*X3+I (tagged response) |  |  |  |  |  |
| X54        | = | Auto switch mode  | <ul> <li>Ø = disable (default)</li> <li>1 = prioritizes the highest numbered active input</li> <li>2 = prioritizes the lowest numbered active input</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |  |  |
| X55        | = | Video mute on all outputs   | <ul> <li>Ø = all outputs are unmuted</li> <li>1 = at least one output is muted</li> <li>2 = at least one output is muted and sync is disabled</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |  |  |
| X56        | = | Volume knob group number  | <ol> <li>1 = program volume (default)</li> <li>3 = mic volume</li> <li>8 = output volume</li> </ol>  |  |  |  |  |  |

| <u>X57</u> | = | Gain or mute control             | <ul> <li>4Ø1ØØ = mic 1 (mix volume only)</li> <li>4Ø0ØØ = mic 1 (mute only)</li> <li>4Ø1Ø1 = mic 2 (mix volume only)</li> <li>4Ø0Ø1 = mic 2 (mute only)</li> <li>6Ø0ØØ = output 1</li> <li>6Ø0Ø2 = output 2</li> <li>6Ø0Ø4 = variable output L</li> <li>6Ø0Ø5 = variable output R</li> <li>6Ø0Ø6 = digital output L</li> <li>6Ø0Ø7 = digital output R</li> <li>6Ø0Ø8 = amplified output L (stereo models) or amplified output (mono models)</li> <li>6Ø0Ø9 = amplified output R (stereo models)</li> </ul>  |
|------------|---|----------------------------------|---|
| <u>X58</u> | = | Gain or trim level               | - 1000 to $0 = dB$ value multiplied by ten, in 0.1 dB increments, (for example, -100 = -10 dB)<br>0 = default   |
| X59        | = | HDCP mode                        | <ul> <li>Ø = encrypts the output only when required by<br/>the selected input source (default)</li> <li>1 = always encrypts the output, regardless of<br/>the HDCP status of the selected input<br/>source</li> <li>2 = encrypts the output only when required by<br/>the selected input source. Use this setting<br/>when DVI sink devices initially pass HDCP<br/>encrypted content, but intermittently display<br/>a green HDCP notification screen after a<br/>power cycle or resuming from sleep mode.</li> <li>3 = always encrypts the output regardless of the<br/>HDCP status of the selected input source.<br/>Use this setting when DVI sink devices<br/>initially pass HDCP encrypted content, but<br/>intermittently display a green HDCP<br/>notification screen after a power cycle or<br/>resuming from sleep mode.</li> <li>4 = prevents HDCP encryption and<br/>authentication.</li> </ul> |
| <u>X60</u> | = | EDID emulation or output<br>rate | <ul> <li>Ø = automatic (matches the current output resolution, default for EDID emulation only)</li> <li>1 = output 1A (available for EDID export only)</li> <li>2 = output 1B (available for EDID export only)</li> <li>3 = custom EDID or output rate 1</li> <li>4 = custom EDID or output rate 2</li> <li>5 = custom EDID or output rate 3</li> <li>6 = custom EDID/output rate 4</li> <li>7 = custom EDID/output rate 5</li> <li>8 = custom EDID/output rate 6</li> <li>9 = output 1C (available for EDID export only)</li> <li>1Ø-92 = factory EDID (see the table below)</li> <li>2Ø1 = custom EDID/output rate 7</li> <li>2Ø2 = custom EDID/output rate 8</li> </ul>   |

| SIS Variables for EDID Resolution and Refresh Rate Combinations (where X60 = 10-92) |          |       |       |          |       |       |          |       |       |
|---|----------|-------|-------|----------|-------|-------|----------|-------|-------|
| Resolution  | 23.98 Hz | 24 Hz | 25 Hz | 29.97 Hz | 30 Hz | 50 Hz | 59.94 Hz | 60 Hz | 75 Hz |
| 640x480   |          |       |       |          |       | 1Ø    |          | 11    | 12    |
| 800×600   |          |       |       |          |       | 13    |          | 14    | 15    |
| 852x480   |          |       |       |          |       | 16    |          | 17    | 18    |
| 1024x768  |          |       |       |          |       | 19    |          | 2Ø    | 21    |
| 1024x852  |          |       |       |          |       | 22    |          | 23    | 24    |
| 1024x1024   |          |       |       |          |       | 25    |          | 26    | 27    |
| 1280x768  |          |       |       |          |       | 28    |          | 29    | ЗØ    |
| 1280x800  |          |       |       |          |       | 31    |          | 32    | 33    |
| 1280x1024   |          |       |       |          |       | 34    |          | 35    | 36    |
| 1360x765  |          |       |       |          |       | 37    |          | 38    | 39    |
| 1360x768  |          |       |       |          |       | 4Ø    |          | 41    | 42    |
| 1365x768  |          |       |       |          |       | 43    |          | 44    | 45    |
| 1366x768  |          |       |       |          |       | 46    |          | 47    | 48    |
| 1365x1024   |          |       |       |          |       | 49    |          | 5Ø    | 51    |
| 1440x900  |          |       |       |          |       | 52    |          | 53    | 54    |
| 1400x1050   |          |       |       |          |       | 55    |          | 56    |       |
| 1600x900  |          |       |       |          |       | 57    |          | 58    |       |
| 1680x1050   |          |       |       |          |       | 59    |          | 6Ø    |       |
| 1600x1200   |          |       |       |          |       | 61    |          | 62    |       |
| 1920x1200   |          |       |       |          |       | 63    |          | 64    |       |
| 480p  |          |       |       |          |       |       | 65       | 66    |       |
| 576p  |          |       |       |          |       | 67    |          |       |       |
| 720p  |          |       | 68    | 69       | 7Ø    | 71    | 72       | 73*   |       |
| 1080i   |          |       |       |          |       | 74    | 75       | 76    |       |
| 1080p   | 77       | 78    | 79    | 8Ø       | 81    | 82    | 83       | 84    |       |
| 2048x1080 (2K)  | 85       | 86    | 87    | 88       | 89    | 9Ø    | 91       | 92    |       |

\* = Default output resolution

| <u>X61</u>   | = | Port number | <ol> <li>remote port (3-pole captive screw)</li> <li>= UART** on DTP input 7</li> <li>= UART on DTP input 8</li> <li>= UART on DTP/HDBT output 1C</li> <li>**UART = universal asynchronous receiver-<br/>transmitter</li> </ol> |  |  |
|--------------|---|-------------|---|--|--|
| <u>X62</u> = |   | Baud rate   | 300, 600, 1200, 1800, 2400, 3600, 4800,<br>7200, 9600 (default), 14400, 19200, 28800,<br>38400, 57600, 115200   |  |  |
|              |   |             | <b>NOTE:</b> Via PCS and the web pages, only <b>9600</b> , <b>19200</b> , <b>38400</b> , and <b>115200</b> baud rates are selectable.   |  |  |
| X63          | = | Parity      | Odd, Even, None, Mark, Space<br>(Only the first letter is required.)  |  |  |

| X64        | = | Data bits                  | 7 or 8 (default)   |
|------------|---|----------------------------|--|
| X65        | = | Stop bits                  | 1 (default) or 2   |
| <u>X66</u> | = | Port timeout               | Set in increments of 10 seconds:<br>1 (10 seconds) to 65000 (650,000 seconds)<br>Default = 30 (300 seconds)                    |
| X67        | = | Start point for UART ports | Controller RS-232 = port 2001  |
| X68        | = | Twisted pair (TP) format   | <ul> <li>Ø = DTP format (Includes 12 VDC DTP remote power, default)</li> <li>1 = HDBaseT format</li> </ul>                     |
| <u>X69</u> | = | DTP RS-232 insertion mode  | <ul> <li>Ø = RS-232 pass-through – rear panel captive<br/>screw connector (default)</li> <li>1 = IP insert via UART</li> </ul> |

| Command   | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler)  | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)   | Additional Description                                       |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| Input Switching Comm  | nands  |  |  |  |
| Input Selection   |  |  |  |  |
| NOTES:<br>Audio breakaway (\$<br>Video breakaway (8<br>Attempting either or<br>Audio breakaway is | s) is not allowed to an inpu<br>a) is not allowed from an ir<br>f these invalid modes give<br>always allowed back to t | ut configured for any digital audio<br>nput configured for any digital aud<br>s an E17 error.<br>he current video input. | format.<br>io format.  |  |
| Video and audio   | X1 !   | In⊠1●All←  | Select video and audio from input                            |  |
| Video only  | X1 &   | In⊠●RGB←   | Select video-only from input 🕅.                              |  |
| Audio only  | <u>X1</u> \$   | In⊠●Aud←   | Select audio-only from input X1.                             |  |
| View video input  | &  | אַז ←<br>In verbose modes 2 and 3:<br>Inאַז•RGB←   | View the current video input.                                |  |
| View audio input  | \$   | אַז ←<br>In verbose modes 2 and 3:<br>Inאו•Aud←  | View the current audio input.                                |  |
| View current input  | !  | אז ←<br>In verbose modes 2 and<br>3:<br>Inאז•All←  | View the current video and audio input.                      |  |
| Auto Switch Mode  |  |  |  |  |
| Disable auto switch mode  | Esc]ØAUS₩ <del>←</del>   | AuswØ◀┛  | Manual input switching only (default).                       |  |
| Prioritize highest active input   | Esc 1AUSW  | Ausw1 <b>←</b>   | Automatically switches to the highest numbered active input. |  |
| Prioritize lowest active input  | Esc 2AUSW  | Ausw2 <b>←</b>   | Automatically switches to the lowest numbered active input.  |  |
| View auto switch mode   | Esc AUSW←  | x₅a,<br>In verbose modes 2 and 3:<br>Auswx5a,  | View the current auto switch mode.                           |  |
| KEY:  |  |  |  |  |
| <b>X1</b> = Input selection   |  | 1 - 8  |  |  |
| X54 = Auto switch mode  |  | <ul> <li>Ø = disable (default)</li> <li>1 = gives priority to the highest not give priority to the lowest nut</li> </ul> | umbered active input<br>Imbered active input                 |  |

# **Command and Response Table**

| Command  | ASCII Command<br>(Host to scaler) | Response<br>(Scaler to host)  | Additional Description   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|-----------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Input Configuration Co   | mmands (continued                 | )   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Input Video Format   |                                   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Set video format   | X1 * X3 \                         | Тур <u>х1</u> *хз◀┛   | Set input 🚺 to format 🗷.                                       |  |  |  |  |  |
| View set format  | <u>x1</u> \                       | छ्ञ⊶<br>In verbose modes 2 and<br>3:<br>Typ⊠1*छा≁   | View the set video format.                                     |  |  |  |  |  |
| Input EDID   |                                   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>NOTES:</li> <li>EDID import and export commands use the device user file system to hold an EDID file. Use IP Link File Manager (download IP Link File Manager from the Extron website) to move EDID files between a PC and the device user file system.</li> <li>&lt;<i>filename</i>&gt; can optionally carry a full path name on the device user file system.</li> <li>EDID files must have an file extension of .bin, carrying 128 or 256 bytes of binary data.</li> <li>Exporting a default EDID table (for an x59 value of 10 or greater) results in the HDMI LPCM-2Ch table being</li> </ul> |                                   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |                                   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Assign EDID to input   | EscAX1*X60EDID←                   | EdidA <u>x1</u> * <u>x60</u> ←  | Assign EDID <b>x60</b> to input <b>x1</b> .                    |  |  |  |  |  |
| View assigned EDID   |                                   |   | View the EDID for input <b>x1</b> .                            |  |  |  |  |  |
| Save an output EDID to<br>custom slot  | Esc]SX2 *X60]EDID <del>←</del>    | EdidS <u>X2</u> * <u>X60</u> <b>≁</b>   | Save output <b>x2</b> EDID to <b>x60</b> (3 - 8,<br>201, 202). |  |  |  |  |  |
| Export EDID file   | EscEX60, <filename></filename>    | EDID←<br>EdidE <u>x60</u> ←   | Export <b>X60</b> (1 - 92, 201, 202) EDID.                     |  |  |  |  |  |
| Import EDID file   | EscIX60, <filename></filename>    | EDID←<br>EdidIX60←  | Import x60 (3 - 8, 201, 202) EDID.                             |  |  |  |  |  |
| Input Name   |                                   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Write input name   | Esc X1, X14NI ←                   | NmiX1,X14←  | Rename input <b>X1</b> .                                       |  |  |  |  |  |
| View input name  | Esc X1 N I ←                      | <u>X14</u> ← J  | View the name of input <b>X1</b> .                             |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |                                   | In verbose modes 2 and<br>Nmi⊠1, ⊠14  | 13:  |  |  |  |  |  |
| NOTE: To clear an input na   | me, enter a single space c        | haracter for x14. This resets the   | input name to the default.                                     |  |  |  |  |  |
| KEV.   |                                   |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\mathbf{X1} = $ Input selection   | 1                                 | - 8   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ₩3 = Input video format  | 1<br>2<br>3<br>4<br>5<br>6        | <ol> <li>RGB (default for inputs 1 and 2)</li> <li>YUV</li> <li>RGBcvS</li> <li>S-video</li> <li>Composite</li> <li>HDMI (default for inputs 3 and higher)</li> </ol> |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X14 = Input name (text label)  | U                                 | Up to 16 characters   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| <b>X60</b> = EDID emulation  | Se                                | See the <b>X60</b> definition on page 55.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| Command                                    | ASCII Command<br>(Host to scaler) |   | Response<br>(Scaler to host)                           | Additional Description   |  |  |
|--|-----------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
| Input Configuration Co                     | mmands (continu                   | ed)   |  |  |  |  |
| Auto-Image                                 |                                   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Enable                                     | <u>x1</u> *1A                     |   | Img <mark>X1</mark> *1 <b>←</b>                        | Activate Auto-Image for input X1.  |  |  |
| Disable                                    | X1 *ØA                            |   | Img <b>xı</b> *Ø <b>←</b>                              | Turn off Auto-Image for input 🕅.   |  |  |
| View                                       | AIX                               |   | छ्रज्⊶<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Imgष्रा *छ्र्ज्⊶ | View the Auto-Image setting for input 🕅.   |  |  |
| Execute                                    | A                                 |   | ImgØ◀┛   | Execute an Auto-Image for the current input (follows the aspect ratio of the current input). |  |  |
| Execute and fill                           | 1*A                               |   | Img1 <b>←</b>  | Execute an Auto-Image and fill the entire output.  |  |  |
| Execute and follow                         | 2*A                               |   | Img2 <b>≁</b> ∣  | Execute an Auto-Image and maintain the aspect ratio of the current input.                    |  |  |
| Auto-Image Threshold Va                    | lue (Luminosity valu              | ue w  | hich the scaler defines a                              | as active video for Auto-Image)  |  |  |
| Set value                                  | ESC X30 ALVL                      |   | Alv1x30  | Set the global Auto-Image<br>Iuminosity to 🔀 אין.  |  |  |
| View                                       | Esc ALVL -                        |   | x30←<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>A1v1x30←           | View the global Auto-Image luminosity setting.   |  |  |
| Horizontal start                           |                                   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Specify a value                            | Esc X4 HSRT ←                     |   | HsrtX1*X4←   | Set the horizontal start position.   |  |  |
| Increment value                            | Esc +HSRT ←                       |   | Hsrt <u>X1</u> * <u>X4</u> ←                           | Shift the horizontal start position to the right by one pixel.                               |  |  |
| Decrement value                            | Esc - HSRT <del>←</del>           |   | HsrtX1*X4←   | Shift the horizontal start position to the left by one pixel.                                |  |  |
| View                                       | Esc HSRT <del>←</del>             |   | X₄←<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>HsrtX1*X₄←          | View horizontal start position <b>X4</b> for the selected input <b>(X1)</b> .                |  |  |
| Vertical Start                             |                                   |   |  |  |  |  |
| Specify a value                            | Esc X4 VSRT ←                     |   | VsrtX1*X4←   | Set the vertical start position.   |  |  |
| Increment value                            | Esc +VSRT                         |   | Vsrt <u>X1</u> *X4                                     | Shift the vertical start position up by one line.  |  |  |
| Decrement value                            | Esc - VSRT                        |   | VsrtX1*X4←   | Shift the vertical start position down by one line.  |  |  |
| View                                       | Esc VSRT ←                        |   | X4<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>VsrtX1*X4←           | View vertical start position 🛛 for the selected input (🔄).                                   |  |  |
| KEY:                                       |                                   |   |  |  |  |  |
| X1 = Input selection                       |                                   | 1-8   |  |  |  |  |
| $\mathbf{X4}$ = Horizontal and vertical st | art                               | Ø-255 (128 = default)   |  |  |  |  |
| x9 = Auto-Image On or Off sta              | itus                              |   |  |  |  |  |
| <b>X30</b> = Auto-Image threshold va       | alue                              | $\emptyset$ - 1 $\emptyset\emptyset$ (where $\emptyset$ = black and 1 $\emptyset\emptyset$ = white; 25 = default) |  |  |  |  |

| Command   | ASCII Command<br>(Host to scaler)        |        | Response<br>(Scaler to host)                       | Additional Description                                   |  |  |
|---|--|--------|--|--|--|--|
| Input Configuration Co  | Input Configuration Commands (continued) |        |  |  |  |  |
| Pixel Phase (Available only for RGB and YUV-HD input signals) |  |        |  |  |  |  |
| Specify a value   | Esc X5 PHAS                              |        | Phas <mark>X1</mark> *X5 <del>←</del>              | Set the pixel phase to 📧 on the current input.           |  |  |
| Increment value   | Esc +PHAS                                |        | Phas <mark>⊠1</mark> *⊠ <b>↓</b>                   | Increase the pixel phase by one on the current input.    |  |  |
| Decrement value   | Esc - PHAS                               |        | Phas <mark>⊠1</mark> *⊠ <b>↓</b>                   | Decrease the pixel phase by one on the current input.    |  |  |
| View  | Esc PHAS <del>-</del>                    |        | x5<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>Phas⊠1*x5←   | View the pixel phase of the current input.               |  |  |
| Total Pixels (Available only                                  | y for RGB and YUV-                       | -HD ii | nput signals)                                      |  |  |  |
| Specify a value   | Esc X6 TPIX                              |        | Tpix <u>X1</u> *X6 <b>←</b>                        | Set the total pixels to <b>xe</b> on the current input.  |  |  |
| Increment value   | Esc +TPIX-                               |        | Tpix <mark>X1</mark> * <mark>X6</mark> ←           | Increase the total pixels by one on the current input.   |  |  |
| Decrement value   | Esc - TPIX-                              |        | Tpix <mark>X1</mark> *X6←                          | Decrease the total pixels by one on the current input.   |  |  |
| View  | Esc TPIX ←                               |        | xe<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>Tpixx1 * xe← | View the total pixels setting on the current input.      |  |  |
| Active Pixels   |  |        |  |  |  |  |
| Specify a value   | Esc X7 APIX                              |        | Apix <mark>X1</mark> *X7←                          | Set the active pixels to <b>x7</b> on the current input. |  |  |
| Increment value   | Esc +APIX ←                              |        | Apix <mark>X1</mark> * <del>X7</del> ←             | Increase the active pixels by one on the current input.  |  |  |
| Decrement value   | Esc - APIX-                              |        | Apix <mark>X1</mark> * <mark>X7</mark> ←           | Decrease the active pixels by one on the current input.  |  |  |
| View  | ESC APIX -                               |        | x7<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>Apix⊠1*X7←   | View the active pixels on the current input.             |  |  |
| KEY:  |  |        |  |  |  |  |
| X1 = Input selection  |  | 1-8    |  |  |  |  |
| <b>X5</b> = Pixel phase                                       |  | Ø-63   | 3 (31 = default)                                   |  |  |  |
| <b>x6</b> = Total pixels                                      |  | ±512   | 2 of the default value                             |  |  |  |
| X7 = Active pixels  |  | ±256   | $\mathfrak{s}$ of the default value                |  |  |  |

| Command  | ASCII Command<br>(Host to scaler)        | Response<br>(Scaler to host)   | Additional Description   |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Input Configuration Co                         | Input Configuration Commands (continued) |  |  |  |  |
| Active Lines                                   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Specify a value                                | ESC X8ALIN-                              | Alin <mark>X1</mark> *⊠ <b>≁</b>   | Set the active lines to 📧 on the current input.                |  |  |
| Increment value                                | Esc +ALIN←                               | Alin <mark>⊠1</mark> *⊠ <b>↔</b>   | Increase the active lines by one on the current input.         |  |  |
| Decrement value                                | Esc - ALIN                               | Alin <mark>ĭ1*⊠€</mark>  | Decrease the active lines by one on the current input.         |  |  |
| View   | EscALIN←                                 | <mark>⊠8</mark> ←<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3<br>Alin <mark>X1</mark> *X8 <mark>≁</mark>  | View the active lines of the current<br>input.                 |  |  |
| 3:2, 2:2, 24:1 Film Mode [                     | Detection                                |  |  |  |  |
| Auto   | EscX1*1FILM←                             | Film⊠1*⊠4  | Set film mode detection to automatic (default).                |  |  |
| Off  | Esc X1 *ØFILM ←                          | Film <mark>X1</mark> *X12←   | Disable film mode detection.                                   |  |  |
| View setting                                   | Esc X1]FILM←                             | <u>x12</u> ←<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>Filmx1*x12←  | View the current film mode setting.                            |  |  |
| Picture Adjustment Co                          | mmands                                   |  |  |  |  |
| Video Mute for Individual                      | Outputs (Defaults                        | to unmuted after a power o   | eycle)   |  |  |
| Set video mute for an individual output        | X2*X29B                                  | Vmtx2*x29  | Mute the video or the video and sync, or unmute output 🔀 only. |  |  |
| View individual output<br>mute status          | X2*B                                     | <u> x29</u>  | View the mute status of output <b>X2</b> .<br>3:               |  |  |
| Video Mute for All Output                      | ts (Defaults to unm                      | uted after a power cycle)  |  |  |  |
| Mute video to black                            | 1B                                       | Vmt1←  | Mute video to black on all outputs.                            |  |  |
| Mute sync and video                            | 2B                                       | Vmt2 <b>←</b>  | Mute video and sync on all outputs.                            |  |  |
| Unmute sync and video                          | ØB                                       | VmtØ←  | Unmute all outputs.  |  |  |
| View mute status on all outputs                | В  | <u>ष्रऽ</u> ड्र⊶<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3<br>Vmtष्ठ्रङ् <del>र</del> ⊶   | View the mute status on all outputs.                           |  |  |
| KEY:   |  |  |  |  |  |
| X1 = Input selection                           |  | 1-8  |  |  |  |
| <b>X2</b> = Output selection                   |  | <ul> <li>1 = Output 1A - HDMI (top connector)</li> <li>2 = Output 1B - HDMI (bottom connector)</li> <li>3 = Output 1C - DTP/HDBT</li> </ul>              |  |  |  |
| X8 = Active lines                              |  | ±256 of the default value  |  |  |  |
| X12 = Film detect mode                         |  | $\emptyset$ = disabled, 1 = auto (default)   |  |  |  |
| <b>X29</b> = Video mute for individual outputs |  | Ø = unmute<br>1 = mute video<br>2 = mute video and sync  |  |  |  |
| X55 = Video mute on all outputs                |  | <ul> <li>Ø = all outputs are unmuted</li> <li>1 = at least one output is muted</li> <li>2 = at least one output is muted and sync is disabled</li> </ul> |  |  |  |

| Command                                 | ASCII Command<br>(Host to scaler) | Response<br>(Scaler to host)   | Additional Description                                      |  |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|---|--|
| Picture Adjustment Commands (continued) |                                   |  |   |  |
| Color (NTSC, PAL, and SE                | CAM inputs only)                  |  |   |  |
| Specify a value                         | Esc X15 COLR                      | Colr <u>K1</u> * <u>K15</u> ←  | Set the color level on the current input.                   |  |
| Increment value                         | Esc +COLR -                       | ColrX1*X15←  | Increase the color level by one.                            |  |
| Decrement value                         | Esc - COLR ←                      | ColrX1*X15←  | Decrease the color level by one.                            |  |
| View                                    | Esc COLR <del>&lt;</del>          | x15<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Colrx1*x15←                                 | View the color level setting.                               |  |
| Tint (NTSC inputs only)                 |                                   |  |   |  |
| Specify a value                         | Esc X15 TINT -                    | Tint <u>X1</u> * <u>X15</u> ◀┛   | Set the tint on the current input.                          |  |
| Increment value                         | Esc +TINT -                       | TintX1*X15←  | Increase the tint by one.                                   |  |
| Decrement value                         | Esc - TINT 🗲                      | Tint <u>X1</u> * <u>X15</u> ←  | Decrease the tint by one.                                   |  |
| View                                    | ESC TINT ←                        | <u>ष्रा</u> ड्र<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Tintष्रा*ष्रा5्र⊶               | View the tint setting.                                      |  |
| Contrast                                |                                   |  |   |  |
| Specify a value                         | Esc X15 CONT ←                    | Cont <u>K1</u> * <u>K15</u> ←  | Set the contrast for the current input.                     |  |
| Increment value                         | Esc +CONT -                       | Cont <u>X1</u> * <u>X15</u> ←  | Increase the contrast by one.                               |  |
| Decrement value                         | Esc - CONT 🗲                      | ContX1*X15←  | Decrease the contrast by one.                               |  |
| View                                    | Esc CONT 🗲                        | <u>ष्रा</u> 5<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Cont <u>ष्रा</u> * <u>ष्रा5</u> ≁ | View the contrast setting.                                  |  |
| Brightness                              |                                   |  |   |  |
| Specify a value                         | ESC X15 BRIT ←                    | Brit <mark>X1</mark> * <del>X15</del> ←  | Set the brightness on the current input.                    |  |
| Increment value                         | Esc +BRIT-                        | Brit <u>X1</u> * <u>X15</u> ←  | Increase the brightness by one.                             |  |
| Decrement value                         | Esc - BRIT-                       | Brit <u>X1</u> * <u>X15</u> ←  | Decrease the brightness by one.                             |  |
| View                                    | Esc BRIT-                         | X15  | View the brightness setting.                                |  |
| Detail Filter                           |                                   |  |   |  |
| Specify a value                         |                                   | Hdet <u>K1</u> * <u>K15</u> ←  | Set the detail filter for the current input to <b>x15</b> . |  |
| Increment value                         | Esc +HDET <del>&lt;</del>         | Hdetx1*x15←  | Increase the detail by one.                                 |  |
| Decrement value                         | Esc - HDET ←                      | Hdet <u>X1</u> * <u>X15</u> ←  | Decrease the detail by one.                                 |  |
| View                                    | Esc HDET ←                        | <u>४ा</u> 5<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Hdetx1*४15                          | View the detail filter setting.                             |  |
| <b>KEY:</b><br>X1 = Input selection     |                                   | 1-8  |   |  |
| <b>X15</b> = Picture adjustment         |                                   | Ø-127 (64 = default)   |   |  |

| Command                                 | ASCII Command<br>(Host to scaler)                       |      | Response<br>(Scaler to host)  | Additional Description                   |
|---|---|------|---|--|
| Picture Adjustment Commands (continued) |   |      |   |  |
| Horizontal Shift (Image)                |   |      |   |  |
| Specify a value                         | Esc X16HCTR←  |      | Hctr <mark>X16</mark> ←   | Set the horizontal position to X16.      |
| Increment value                         | Esc +HCTR ←   |      | Hctr <u>⊠16</u>   | Increase the horizontal position by one. |
| Decrement value                         | Esc - HCTR <del>&lt;</del>                              |      | Hctr <mark>X16</mark> ◀┛  | Decrease the horizontal position by one. |
| View                                    | Esc HCTR <del>←</del>                                   |      | X16 ← J<br>In verbose mode 2 and<br>3:HctrX16 ← J                                       | View the horizontal position setting.    |
| Vertical Shift (Image)                  |   |      |   |  |
| Specify a value                         | Esc X17 VCTR  |      | Vctr <mark>X17</mark> ←   | Set the vertical position to 17.         |
| Increment value                         | Esc +VCTR-  |      | Vctr <u>X17</u> ←   | Increase the vertical position by one.   |
| Decrement value                         | Esc - VCTR <del>&lt;</del>                              |      | Vctr <u>K17</u> ←   | Decrease the vertical position by one.   |
| View                                    | Esc VCTR <del>&lt;</del>                                |      | X17<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>VctrX17←1  | View the vertical position setting.      |
| Horizontal Size (Image)                 |   |      |   |  |
| Specify a value                         | Esc X18 HSIZ  |      | Hsiz <mark>X18</mark> ←   | Set the horizontal size to X18.          |
| Increment value                         | Esc +HSIZ-  |      | Hsiz <mark>X18</mark> ←   | Increase the horizontal size by one.     |
| Decrement value                         | Esc - HSIZ  |      | Hsiz <mark>X18</mark> ←   | Decrease the horizontal size by one.     |
| View                                    | Esc HSIZ <del>←</del>                                   |      | X18<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>HsizX18  | View the horizontal size setting.        |
| Vertical Size (Image)                   |   |      |   |  |
| Specify a value                         | Esc X19 VSIZ  |      | Vsiz <u>X19</u> ←   | Set the vertical size to <b>X19</b> .    |
| Increment value                         | Esc +VSIZ-  |      | Vsiz <mark>X19</mark> ◀┛  | Increase the vertical size by one.       |
| Decrement value                         | Esc - VSIZ  |      | Vsiz <u>X19</u> ←   | Decrease the vertical size by one.       |
| View                                    | Esc VSIZ-   |      | x19←<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Vsizx19←  | View the vertical size setting.          |
| Compound Image Positio                  | n and Size  |      |   |  |
| Specify a value                         | Esc X16 *X17]*X18 *X19 XIMG←<br>Ximg X16 *X17]*X18 *X19 |      | Set the horizontal and vertical positions as well as the horizontal and vertical sizes. |  |
| View                                    | Esc XIMG <del>&lt;</del>                                |      | X16 *X17 *X18 *X19  <b>←</b>  | View all position and size settings.     |
|   |   |      | In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>XimgX16 * X17 * X18 * X19                                   |  |
| KEY:                                    |   |      |   |  |
| <b>X16</b> = Horizontal position        |   | ±2Ø4 | 18  |  |
| X17 = Vertical position                 |   | ±120 | ðØ  |  |
| <b>X18</b> = Horizontal size            |   | 1Ø-4 | 1Ø96  |  |
| X19 = Vertical size                     |   | 1Ø-2 | 24ØØ  |  |

| Command                      | ASCII Commar<br>(Host to Scaler)   | nd          | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)                       | Additional Description   |
|------------------------------|--|-------------|--|--|
| Output Configuration C       | ommands  |             |  |  |
| Output Scaler Rate           |  |             |  |  |
| Set output rate              | Esc X60 RATE -   |             | Rate <b>x60</b> ←                                  | Set the output resolution and rate to <b>X60</b> .                 |
| View output rate             | Esc RATE ←   |             | xeo<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>Ratexeo     | View the selected output rate.                                     |
| HDMI Output Format           |  |             |  |  |
| Set format                   | EscX2*X33VTPO  | ←           | Vtpo <b>x2</b> * <mark>x33</mark> ←                | Set the color space and format of output <b>x2</b> to <b>x33</b> . |
| View setting                 | Esck2VTPO←   |             | x33<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>Vtpox2*x33≁ | View the color space and format setting.                           |
| Power Save Mode              |  |             |  |  |
| Power save off               | EscØPSAV←  |             | PsavØ←   | Operate at full power.   |
| Power save on                | Esc 1PSAV  |             | Psav1←   | Operate in a low power state (no video output).                    |
| View setting                 | Esc PSAV ←   |             | x37<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>Psavx37←    | View power save mode X37.  |
| KEY:                         |  |             |  |  |
| X2 = Output selection        | <ul> <li>1 = Output 1A - HDMI (top connector)</li> <li>2 = Output 1B - HDMI (bottom connector)</li> <li>3 = Output 1C - DTP/HDBT</li> </ul>  |             |  |  |
| ¥33 = HDMI output format     | Ø = auto (default)<br>1 = DVI RGB 444<br>2 = HDMI RGB 444 "Full"<br>3 = HDMI RGB 444 "Limited"<br>4 = HDMI YUV 444 "Full"<br>5 = HDMI YUV 444 "Limited"<br>6 = HDMI YUV 422 "Full"<br>7 = HDMI YUV 422 "Limited" |             |  |  |
| <b>X37</b> = Power save mode |  | Ø = full po | ower mode (default), $1 = low$                     | v power state  |
| <b>x60</b> = Output rate     |  | 3-8,1Ø-     | 92,201,202 (see the <b>x60</b>                     | definition on page 55).  |
| Command                                | ASCII Comma<br>(Host to Scaler | and<br>)   | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)   | Additional Description                                   |
|--|--------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Output Configuration (                 | Commands, co                   | ontinued   |  |  |
| Screen Saver                           |                                |  |  |  |
| Set mode                               | Esc MX27 SSAV                  | -  | SsavM <u>x27</u> ←   | Set the color (mode) of the screen saver to <b>x27</b> . |
| View mode                              | Esc MSSAV <del>« -</del>       |  | x27<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>SsavMx27<br>←                                   | View the color of the screen saver<br>([X27]).           |
| Set custom color                       | Esc CX28SSAV                   | -  | SsavC <u>x28</u> ←   | Set custom color <b>128</b> for the screen saver.        |
| View custom color                      | Esc CSSAV <del>+</del>         |  | x28<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>SsavCx28←                                       | View the current custom color (X28).                     |
| Set time-out duration                  | Esc TX23SSAV                   | -  | SsavT <u>x23</u> ←   | Set the time-out duration to X23.                        |
| View time-out duration                 | Esc TSSAV <del>«</del>         |  | x23<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>SsavTx23←                                       | View the time-out duration.                              |
| View screen saver status               | Esc SSSAV <del>-</del>         |  | x38<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>SsavSx38←                                       | View the screen saver status.                            |
| KEY:                                   |                                |  |  |  |
| X23 = Output sync timeout              |                                | <b>1-500</b> (in 1 second increments)<br>0 = output sync is instantly disabled with no active input<br>501 = output sync never times out |  |  |
| X27 = Screen saver mode                |                                | $\emptyset$ = custom color, 1 = black output (default), 2 = blue output  |  |  |
| <b>X28</b> = Custom screen saver color |                                | ØØØØØØ (black) to FFFFFF (white) in HTML style hexadecimal values (for example, FFØØØØ = red, ØØFFØØ = green, and ØØØØFF = blue)         |  |  |
| <b>X38</b> = Screen saver status       |                                | Ø = active<br>1 = no ac<br>2 = no ac   | e input detected, timer no<br>tive input, timer running,<br>tive input, timer expired, | t running<br>output sync enabled<br>output sync disabled |

| Command                           | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler) | Response Additional Description<br>(Scaler to Host)  |  |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| Audio Configuration Co            | ommands                           |  |  |
| Audio Input Format                |                                   |  |  |
| <b>NOTE:</b> For audio input form | nat details, see Audio form       | at on page 104.  |  |
| Set audio input format            | Esc I X1 *X35AFMT ←               | AfmtIX1*X35  | Set the audio format of input 🕅 to 🔀                 |
| View audio input format           | Esc I X1 AFMT <del>&lt; -</del>   | x35<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>Afmt I X1 * X35 ←   | View the audio input format of input <b>X1</b> .     |
| Audio Level Control               |                                   |  |  |
| Set gain or trim                  | Esc G X57 * X58 AU ←              | DsG <mark>x57</mark> * <del>x58</del> ←  | Set the gain of 🗵 to 🗵 set.                          |
| View gain or trim                 | Esc G <mark>X57</mark> AU ←       | x58<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>DsGX57 * x58 ←  | View the gain or trim of x57.                        |
| Audio Mute                        |                                   |  |  |
| Mute audio                        | Esc MX57 * 1AU <del>-</del>       | DsMX57*1   | Mute control x57.                                    |
| Unmute audio                      | Esc MX57 *ØAU ←                   | DsMx57 *Ø◀┛  | Unmute control x57.                                  |
| View audio mute status            | Esc MX57 AU ←                     | x9←1<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>DsMX57*X9←1  | View the mute status of control <b>x57</b> .         |
| KEY:                              |                                   |  |  |
| X1 = Input selection              |                                   | 1-8  |  |
| $\mathbf{X9}$ = Enable or disable |                                   | $\emptyset$ = off or disabled<br>1 = on or enabled   |  |
| 🛛 🛛 🗛 Audio input format          |                                   | <ul> <li>Ø = none (input muted)</li> <li>1 = analog (default for inputs</li> <li>2 = LPCM-2Ch (default for in</li> <li>3 = Multi-Ch</li> <li>4 = LPCM-2Ch auto</li> <li>5 = Multi-Ch auto</li> </ul>   | s 1 and 2)<br>nputs 3 and higher)                    |
| <b>⊻57</b> = Gain or mute contr   | ol                                | <ul> <li>4Ø1ØØ = mic 1 (mix volume only)</li> <li>4Ø0ØØ = mic 1 (mute only)</li> <li>4Ø1Ø1 = mic 2 (mix volume only)</li> <li>4Ø0Ø1 = mic 2 (mute only)</li> <li>6Ø0ØØ = output 1</li> <li>6Ø0ØØ = output 2</li> <li>6Ø0ØØ = left variable output</li> <li>6Ø0ØØ5 = right variable output</li> <li>6Ø0ØØ6 = left digital output</li> <li>6Ø0ØØ7 = right digital output</li> <li>6Ø0Ø8 = left amplified output (stereo models) or amplified output (stereo models)</li> <li>6Ø0Ø9 = right amplified output (stereo models)</li> </ul> |  |
| x58 = Gain or trim level          |                                   | -1000 to $0 = dB$ value multiple example, $-100 = -10 dB$ ), $0$   | olied by ten, in 0.1 dB increments (for<br>= Default |

| Command                                   | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler)    | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)  | Additional Description   |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| Audio Configuration Co                    | ommands, continued                   |   |  |
| Volume Knob Assignment                    | t                                    |   |  |
| Set volume knob group                     | Esc]1 * <u>⊠56</u> KNOB <del>←</del> | Knob1* <u>x₅6</u> ◀┛  | Set the front panel Volume knob value to affect group <b>X56</b> . |
| View volume knob group                    | Esc 1 KNOB <del>&lt; -</del>         | x56<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Knob1*x56  | View the volume knob group.  |
| Group Volume                              |                                      |   |  |
| Set volume                                | Esc D X46 * X47 GRPM ←               | GrpmD <u>X46</u> * <u>X47</u> ◀┛  | Set the volume to a value of $\boxed{X47}$ .                       |
| Raise volume                              | Esc DX46 * X51 + GRPM ←              | GrpmD <u>X46</u> * <u>X47</u> ◀┛  | Increase the volume by X51 dB.                                     |
| Lower volume                              | Esc D X46 * X51 - GRPM ←             | GrpmD <u>X46</u> * <u>X47</u> ◀┛  | Decrease the volume by <b>X51</b> dB.                              |
| View volume level                         | Esc DIX46 GRPM ←                     | <u>x47</u> ←<br>In verbose mode 2 and<br>3:GrpmD <u>x46</u> * <u>x47</u> ←  | View the volume level.   |
| Group Mute                                |                                      |   |  |
| Group mute                                | Esc DX48 * 1 GRPM <del>&lt;</del>    | GrpmD <mark>X48</mark> *1 <b>←</b>  | Mute group 🔀8.   |
| Group unmute                              | Esc DX48 *ØGRPM ←                    | GrpmD <u>X48</u> *∅◀┛   | Unmute group 🔀 8   |
| View group mute status                    | Esc DX48GRPM ←                       | <mark>ਲ਼ਗ਼</mark> ← <b>-</b><br><i>In verbose mode 2 and 3:</i><br>GrpmD <mark>X48</mark> ★ <b>X9</b> ←-                | View the group mute on or off status.                              |
| Group Bass and Treble                     |                                      |   |  |
| Set bass or treble level                  | Esc DX49*X50GRPM ←                   | GrpmD <u>x49</u> * <u>x50</u> ←   | Set the bass or treble to a value of <b>[X50</b> ].                |
| Raise bass or treble                      | Esc DX49*X51 +GRPM ←                 | GrpmD <u>X49</u> * <u>X50</u> ←   | Increase the bass or treble level by <b>[X51]</b> dB.              |
| Lower bass or treble                      | Esc DX49*X51 - GRPM ←                | GrpmD <u>X49</u> * <u>X50</u> ←   | Decrease the bass or treble level by <b>X51</b> dB.                |
| View bass or treble level                 | Esc DX49GRPM ←                       | <u>x50</u> ←<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>GrpmD <u>x49</u> * <u>x50</u> ←   |  |
| KEY:                                      |                                      |   |  |
| <b>X9</b> = Enabled or disabled           |                                      | $\emptyset$ = off or disabled, <b>1</b> = on or   | enabled  |
| <b>X46</b> = Volume group num             | ber                                  | 1 = program volume, 3 = mic volume, 8 = variable volume   |  |
| X47 = Group volume level                  |                                      | -1000 to 0, where -1000 = -100 dB or 0% volume and $0 = 0$ dB or 100% volume  |  |
| X48 = Mute group number                   |                                      | 2 = program mute, 4 = mic mute, 7 = output mute   |  |
| <b>X49</b> = Bass and treble group number |                                      | 5 = bass control, 6 = treble control  |  |
| <b>X50</b> = Group bass and treble level  |                                      | -24Ø to +12Ø, where -24Ø  | = -24 dB and <b>120</b> = 12 dB                                    |
| X51 = Increment value                     |                                      | dB value multiplied by ten, in 0.1 dB increments, to raise or lower a group fader (for example, $100 = 10 \text{ dB}$ ) |  |
| <b>X56</b> = Volume knob group            | ) number                             | <ul> <li>1 = program volume (default)</li> <li>3 = mic volume</li> <li>8 = output volume</li> </ul>                     |  |

| Command  | ASCII Comma<br>(Host to Scaler           | and R<br>) (S                      | Respon:<br>Scaler to                           | se A<br>o Host)                                   | dditional Desc   | ription                         |
|--|--|------------------------------------|--|---|--|---------------------------------|
| Preset Commands<br>Presets   |  |                                    |  |   |  |                                 |
| Setting  | User Preset                              | Input Pres                         | et Set   | tting   | User Preset  | Input Preset                    |
| Horizontal and vertical start  |  | Saved                              | Film   | n detect  |  | Saved                           |
| Active lines   |  | Saved                              | Brig   | htness and contrast                               | Saved  | Saved                           |
| Pixel phase  |  | Saved                              | Colo   | or and tint                                       | Saved  | Saved                           |
| Active and total pixels  |  | Saved                              | Deta   | ail   | Saved  | Saved                           |
| Input type   |  | Saved                              | Size   | e and position                                    | Saved  | Saved                           |
| Audio gain and attenuation   |  | Saved                              | Pres   | set name  | Saved  | Saved                           |
| Recall user preset   | 1*X21.                                   | 1                                  | Rpr X21  | Re Re   | ecall user preset  | X21.                            |
| Save user preset   | 1*X21,                                   | 1                                  | Spr <mark>X21</mark>                           | <b>↓</b> Sa                                       | ave the current pi   | cture controls.                 |
| Delete user preset   | Esc X1 * X21 PRS                         | T← P                               | rstX1*   | <b>X21</b> ← C                                    | ear user preset 🗴  | 21.                             |
| Recall input preset  | 2*X22.                                   | 2                                  | Rprx22   | Re Re   | ecall input preset   | X22.                            |
| Save input preset  | 2*X22,                                   | 2                                  | Spr X22  | Se Se   | ee the table above   | e for settings.                 |
| Delete input preset  | Esc X2*X22PRS                            | T← P                               | rstX2*   | <b>X22</b> ← C                                    | ear input preset 🛛   | (22).                           |
| Preset Names   |  |                                    |  |   |  |                                 |
| NOTE: To clear a preset na<br>"User Preset <i>nn</i> " for us                      | me, enter a single<br>ser presets or "In | space charac<br>put Preset /       | ter for <u>X1</u><br>nnn" for                  | 14. This resets the pre<br>input presets. This is | set name to the over the set of t | default value:<br>ting presets. |
| Write user preset name   | Esc 1 * X21, X14                         | PNAM← P                            | nam1*🛛   | <b>(21), X14</b> ← Se                             | et user preset <b>X21</b>  | name to 🛛 14.                   |
| View user preset name  | Esc 1 * X21 PNAM                         | I <b>← ⊠</b><br>Ir<br>P            | n verbose<br>nam1x2                            | Vi<br>e mode 2 and 3:<br>1],⊠14                   | ew the name of u   | ser preset <b>X21</b> .         |
| Write input preset name  | Esc 2*X22, X14                           | PNAM← P                            | nam2*🛛   | <b>(22</b> , <b>X14</b> ← Se                      | et input preset 🔀  | 2 name to <b>X14</b> .          |
| View input preset name   | Esc 2* X22 PNAM                          | ∣ <del>←</del> <u>×</u><br>Ir<br>P | n verbose<br>nam2x2                            | Vi<br>e mode 2 and 3:<br>2,,⊠14                   | ew the name of ir  | nput preset X22.                |
| Auto Memories (per input)  |  |                                    |  |   |  |                                 |
| Enable   | Esc X1 * 1 AMEM <                        | ⊢ A                                | \mem <mark>X1</mark> *                         | s <b>1</b> ← Er<br>De                             | nable Auto Memo<br>efault is enabled.  | ry on input 🚺.                  |
| Disable  | Esc X1 *ØAMEM◄                           | <b>н</b> А                         | mem <mark>X1</mark> *                          | a <b>∅</b> ←J Di                                  | sable Auto Memo  | ory on input 🛛.                 |
| View   | Esc X1 AMEM←                             | X<br>Ir<br>A                       | ਗ਼<br><i>verbose</i><br>\mem <mark>∑1</mark> * | Vi<br>e mode 2 and 3:<br>™ ←                      | ew the status on   | input 🛛.                        |
| KEY:X1 = Input selectionX9 = Enabled or disabledX14 = Text labelX21 = User presets |  | 1<br>Ø =<br>Up<br>1 -              | 8<br>= off or di<br>• to 16 ch<br><b>16</b>    | isabled, 1 = on or ena<br>naracters               | abled  |                                 |
| x22 = Input presets  |  | 1 -                                | 128  |   |  |                                 |

| Command                                   | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler) | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)   | Additional Description  |  |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|---|--|
| Preset Commands (c<br>Preset Availability | continued)                        |  |   |  |
| Query input preset<br>availability        | 51#                               | x9¹x9²x9¹²8←↓<br>PreIx9¹x9¹²8←↓  | View the status of all input presets.<br>Verbose modes 2 and 3        |  |
| Query user preset<br>availability         | 52*1#                             | x9¹x9²x9¹⁵←<br>In verbose mode 2 and<br>PreUx1*x9¹x9¹6←  | View the status of all user presets. 3:                               |  |
| Advanced Configura                        | tion Commands                     |  |   |  |
| Test Pattern                              |                                   |  |   |  |
| Set pattern                               | Esc X20 TEST -                    | Testx20  | Set test pattern x20.   |  |
| View test pattern                         | Esc TEST←                         | x20<br>In verbose mode 2 and<br>Testx20≠J  | View the current test pattern. 3:                                     |  |
| Freeze                                    |                                   |  |   |  |
| Enable                                    | 1F                                | Frz1←  | Freeze the current input.   |  |
| Disable                                   | ØF                                | FrzØ←  | Unfreeze the current input.   |  |
| View                                      | F                                 | צַפַּאָ<br>In verbose mode 2 and<br>Frz⊠אַל  | View the freeze setting. 3:   |  |
| Video Switch Effect                       |                                   |  |   |  |
| Cut                                       | Esc ØSWEF ←                       | SwefØ←   | Set the switch effect to cut.   |  |
| Fade through black                        | Esc 1SWEF <del>-</del>            | Swef1 <b>≁</b>   | Set the switch effect to fade through black (default).                |  |
| View setting                              | Esc SWEF 🗲                        | <u>x32</u><br>In verbose mode 2 and<br>Swef <u>x32</u>   | View the switch effect setting. 3:                                    |  |
| Front Panel Lockout M                     | lode (Executive Mode              | e)   |   |  |
| Enable mode 1                             | 1X                                | Exe1 🕶   | Lock the entire front panel.  |  |
| Enable mode 2                             | 2X                                | Exe2←  | Limit front panel control to input switching and volume control only. |  |
| Disable                                   | ØX                                | ExeØ◀┛   | Unlock the front panel.   |  |
| View status                               | Х                                 | x₂₄←<br>In verbose mode 2 and<br>Exex2a←   | View lock mode (X24).<br>3:   |  |
| KEY:                                      |                                   |  |   |  |
| <b>X1</b> = Input selection               |                                   | 1-8  |   |  |
| x9 = Enabled or disabled                  |                                   | $\emptyset$ = off or disable, <b>1</b> = on or enable  |   |  |
| X20 = Test patterns                       |                                   | $\emptyset$ = none (default), 1 = crop, 2 = alternating pixels, 3 = color bars,<br>4 = grayscale, 5 = blue mode, 6 = audio test pattern (pink noise)               |   |  |
| X24 = Front Panel Lockout mode status     |                                   | <ul> <li>Ø = off or disabled (default)</li> <li>1 = mode 1 (complete front panel lockout)</li> <li>2 = mode 2 (input selection and volume control only)</li> </ul> |   |  |
| X32 = Video switching                     | effect                            | $\emptyset$ = cut, <b>1</b> = fade through blac  | ck (default)  |  |

| Command                           | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler) | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)  | Additional Description                                |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| Advanced Configuration            | n Commands (continu               | ied)  |   |
| Input Aspect Ratio (Per in        | put)                              |   |   |
| Set for fill                      | Esc X1 * 1ASPR ←                  | Aspr <b>⊠1</b> *1 <b>←</b>  | Fill the entire output.                               |
| Set to follow                     | Esc X1 * 2ASPR ←                  | Aspr <b>X1</b> *2 <b>←</b>  | Maintain the input aspect ratio.                      |
| View aspect setting               |                                   | X26   | View the aspect ratio setting X26 for                 |
|                                   |                                   | In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>Aspr <mark>X1]*X26</mark> 4-  | input 📶.  |
| Overscan Mode (Applies o          | only to SMPTE input res           | olutions)   |   |
| Set value                         | Esc X3 * X25 OSCN ←               | 0scnx3*x25  | Set the overscan value to X25.                        |
| View status                       | Esc X3 OSCN                       | X25 🚽   | View overscan setting <b>X25</b> for input            |
|                                   |                                   | In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>0scnछ3*छ5₊  | format 🛛 .  |
| HDCP Notification (Displa         | yed on non-HDCP displ             | ays with HDCP input sel   | ected)  |
| Enable notification               |                                   | HdcpN1 ←  | Display a green screen (default).                     |
| Disable notification              | Esc NØHDCP ←                      | HdcpNØ◀┛  | Mute output to black.                                 |
| Query notification                | Esc NHDCP <del>-</del>            | छ्रा⊶<br>In verbose modes 2<br>and 3:<br>HdcpNछ⊶  | View HDCP notification setting X9.                    |
| HDCP Status                       |                                   |   |   |
| Query input                       | Esc I X1 HDCP ←                   | Image: Note of the second | View the HDCP status on input XI<br>(inputs 3+ only). |
| Query output                      | EscOX2HDCP←                       | <u>४३</u> 1 <b>⊶</b><br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Hdcp0४2*४३३1⊶   | View the HDCP status on output 🗷.                     |
| KEY:                              |                                   |   |   |
| X1 = Input selection              |                                   | 1-8   |   |
| <b>X2</b> = Output selection      |                                   | 1 = Output 1A – HDMI (top co<br>2 = Output 1B – HDMI (botton<br>3 = Output 1C – DTP/HDBT  | onnector)<br>m connector)                             |
| 🔀 = Input video format            |                                   | 1 = RGB, 2 = YUV, 3 = RGBc<br>6 = HDMI  | evS, 4 = S-video, 5 = Composite,                      |
| <b>X9</b> = Enable or disable     |                                   | $\emptyset$ = off or disabled, 1 = on or  | enabled   |
| X25 = Overscan                    |                                   | Ø = 0.0% (default for RGB and<br>1 = 2.5% (default for YUV, RG<br>2 = 5.0%  | d HDMI)<br>¡BcvS, S-Video, and CV)                    |
| <b>X26</b> = Aspect ratio setting |                                   | 1 = fill (default), 2 = follow  |   |
| X31 = HDCP status                 |                                   | Ø = no sink or source device of<br>1 = sink or source detected w<br>2 = sink or source detected b   | detected<br>vith HDCP<br>vut no HDCP is present       |

| Command                           | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler) | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)  | Additional Description   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| Advanced Configuration            | n Commands (continu               | ied)  |  |
| HDCP Authorized Setting           | (valid for HDMI inputs of         | only, to allow or block HI  | DCP input signals)   |
| Enable HDCP authorization         | Esc E 🕅 * 1 HDCP 🗲                | HdcpE⊠1*1←  | Enable HDCP authorization<br>(inputs 3+ only). Default is enabled.   |
| Disable HDCP<br>authorization     | Esc E X1 *ØHDCP ←                 | HdcpE⊠1*Ø←  | Disable HDCP authorization (inputs 3+ only).   |
| Query HDCP authorization status   | Esc]E X1] HDCP ←                  | x39<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>HdcpEx1*x39←   | View HDCP authorization setting  |
| HDCP Output Mode                  |                                   |   |  |
| Set HDCP mode                     | Esc S X59 HDCP ←                  | HdcpSx59 ←  | Set the HDCP mode to 🗵 59.   |
| View HDCP mode setting            | Esc SHDCP <del>-</del>            | x59<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>HdcpSx59   | View HDCP mode 🔀 9.  |
| Video Signal Presence             |                                   |   |  |
| View video signal presence status | EscØLS←                           | x36*x36*x36*x36←<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:  | View video signal presence for all inputs.   |
|                                   |                                   | InØØ•x36*x36*x36*x36*   | <u>X36</u> ◀┛  |
| KEY:                              |                                   |   |  |
| $\mathbf{x_1} = $ Input selection |                                   | 1-8   |  |
| x36 = Video signal statu          | JS                                | Ø = video/HDMI signal not de<br>1 = video/HDMI signal detect  | tected<br>ed   |
| x39 = HDMI input HDCP a           | authorization status              | $\emptyset$ = block HDCP encryption<br>1 = allow HDCP encryption (or  | default)   |
| ⊻ड्रा = HDCP mode                 |                                   | <ul> <li>Ø = encrypts the output only input source (default)</li> <li>1 = always encrypts the output status of the selected inp</li> <li>2 = encrypts the output only input source. Use this set initially pass HDCP encryptication of the selected inp</li> <li>3 = always encrypts the output status of the selected inp</li> <li>DVI sink devices initially put intermittently display a screen after a power cycle</li> <li>4 = prevents HDCP encryptication</li> </ul> | when required by the selected<br>ut, regardless of the HDCP<br>ut source<br>when required by the selected<br>ting when DVI sink devices<br>oted content, but intermittently<br>tification screen after a power<br>eep mode.<br>ut regardless of the HDCP<br>ut source. Use this setting when<br>ass HDCP encrypted content,<br>a green HDCP notification<br>e or resuming from sleep mode.<br>on and authentication. |

| Command   | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler)                         | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)   | Additional Description   |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Device Commands   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| On-screen Input "Bug" Timeout   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| NOTE: The OSD bug is a fl   | oating message displayed af                               | ter selecting a new input.   |  |  |  |  |
| Set OSD bug time-out  | Esc X23 MDUR -  | Mdur <mark>X23</mark> ←  | Set the duration the OSD bug displays to <b>x23</b> seconds (ØØ3 = default). |  |  |  |
| View time-out   | Esc MDUR ←  | <u>X23</u> ←   | View OSD duration X23.   |  |  |  |
|   |   | In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Mdur <mark>⊠23</mark> ←  |  |  |  |  |
| <b>NOTE:</b> Setting the time-out the OSD bug.  | t to <b>5Ø1</b> permanently display                       | s the OSD bug (never times o   | ut). Setting the time-out to ${\it 0}$ disables                              |  |  |  |
| Reset   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Erase user-supplied web pages and files <sup>24, 28</sup>   | EscfilenameEF←  | Del•filename←  | Delete imported web pages and files.   |  |  |  |
| Erase current directory and files <sup>24 28</sup>  | Esc / EF ←  | Ddl←   | Delete the current directory and files.                                      |  |  |  |
| Erase current directory and subdirectories <sup>24, 28</sup>  | Esc / / EF ←  | Ddl←   | Delete the current directory and subdirectories.                             |  |  |  |
| Erase flash memory <sup>24</sup>  | Esc ZFFF <del>←</del>                                     | Zpf←   | Clear the flash memory.  |  |  |  |
| Reset all device settings to factory default <sup>24</sup>  | Esc ZXXX ←  | Zpx←   | Reset all device settings to factory default.                                |  |  |  |
| Absolute system reset <sup>24</sup><br>(includes setting DHCP:<br>off; IP 192.168.254.254)  | Esc ZQQQ <del>&lt; -</del>                                | Zpq <b>≁</b> J   | Reset all device settings, including DHCP and IP settings.                   |  |  |  |
| NOTE: Entering this cor<br>Summary table on p   | mmand or performing a mod<br>age 43) causes the current p | e 5 reset via the rear panel <b>Re</b><br>asswords to revert to no pass  | set button (see the <b>Reset Modes</b><br>sword.                             |  |  |  |
| Absolute system reset <sup>24</sup><br>(retain IP)  | Esc ZY-   | Zpy <b>←</b>   | Reset all device settings, excluding IP settings.                            |  |  |  |
| Verbose Mode  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Set verbose mode  | Esc X53 CV ←  | Vrbx53   | Enable or disable verbose mode and tagged responses.                         |  |  |  |
| View verbose mode   | Esc CV ←  | x53<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Vrbx53  | View the verbose mode.   |  |  |  |
| KEY:  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| X23= On-screen display bug time-out1 - 500 (in 1-second increments).<br>0 = OSD bug is never displayed.<br>3 = default.<br>501 = OSD bug never times out. |   | nts).<br>jed.<br>out.  |  |  |  |  |
| x53 = Verbose mode  |   | <ul> <li>Ø = clear or none (default for Telnet connections)</li> <li>1 = verbose mode (default for RS-232 and USB connections)</li> <li>2 = tagged responses for queries</li> <li>3 = verbose mode and tagged queries</li> </ul> |  |  |  |  |
|   |   | (See the <b>Verbose Mode syn</b> information.)   | <b>abol definition</b> on page 53 for more                                   |  |  |  |

| Command  | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler) | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)   | Additional Description   |
|--|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| Device Commands, cor                           | ntinued                           |  |  |
| Information Request                            |                                   |  |  |
| General Information                            | I                                 | Vid <u>¤1</u> ●Aud <u>¤1</u> ●Typ <u>¤3</u> ●S<br>Hrt <u>¤13</u> ●Vrt <u>¤13</u> ◀┛  | td <u>x10</u> ●Blk <u>x29</u> ●  |
| Query firmware version                         | Q                                 | n.nn✦<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>VerØ1*n.nn✦   | View the unit firmware version (displayed to two decimal places).        |
| Query full firmware version                    | *Q                                | n .nn .nnnn←<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Bldn .nn .nnnn←  | View the unit firmware version and build.                                |
| Query part number                              | Ν                                 | 6Ø-1238-nn←<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Pno6Ø-1238-nn←  | View the unit part number.   |
| View internal temperature                      | Esc]2ØSTAT←                       | <u>x11</u><br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>2ØStat <mark>x11</mark> ≁  | View unit internal temperature <b>x11</b> in degrees Celsius.            |
| Backup or Restore Config                       | juration                          |  |  |
| NOTE: For more informatio                      | n, see <b>Backup</b> on page 87   | and <b>Restore</b> on page 88.   |  |
| Save configuration to file system              | Esc 1 * X45 XF ←                  | Cfg1* <mark>X45</mark> ←   | Back up the current device configuration.                                |
| Restore configuration from file system         | EscØ*X45XF←                       | CfgØ* <mark>X45</mark> ◀┛  | Restore device configuration.  |
| Device Naming                                  |                                   |  |  |
| Set unit name <sup>24</sup>                    | Esc X14 CN                        | Ipn●X14  | Set the device name to X14.  |
| Set unit name to factory default <sup>24</sup> | Esc) ● CN ←                       | Ipn•X34 ←  | Reset the device name to its factory default name X34.                   |
| View unit name                                 | Esc CN <del>&lt;</del>            | <u>४1</u> ब्<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Ipn <mark>४1व</mark> ्र-1  | View device name <b>X14</b> .  |
| KEY:   |                                   |  |  |
| X1 = Input selection                           |                                   | 1-8  |  |
| 🔀 = Input video format                         |                                   | 1 = RGB, 2 = YUV, 3 = RGB<br>6 = HDMI  | cvS, 4 = S-video, 5 = composite,   |
| X10 = Input standard                           |                                   | <ul> <li>Ø = no signal detected on the</li> <li>2 = PAL, 3 = NTSC 4.43, 4 =</li> <li>- = not applicable (occurs where YUV, or HDMI signals)</li> </ul> | e current input, 1 = NTSC 3.85,<br>SECAM<br>nen the input is active RGB, |
| X11 = Internal temperatur                      | e                                 | In degrees Celsius   |  |
| <b>X13</b> = Horizontal and vert               | ical frequencies                  | nnn.n  |  |
| <b>X14</b> = Text label                        |                                   | Up to 63 characters. See the page 50 for a list of restriction   | Text label symbol definition on<br>as that apply to text labels.         |
| X29 = Video output mute                        |                                   | $\emptyset$ = unmute, 1 = mute video,  | 2 = mute video and sync  |
| X34 = Default name                             |                                   | A combination of model nam MAC address   | e and the last 3 character pairs of the                                  |
| <b>X45</b> = Config type                       |                                   | Ø = IP  config, 2 = box-specification  | c parameters   |

| Command   | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler) | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)  | Additional Description                                    |  |  |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|---|--|--|
| <b>IP Control Port Comma</b>  | nds                               |   |   |  |  |
| IP Setup  |                                   |   |   |  |  |
| NOTE: Changes made to any TCP/IP settings do not take effect until the reboot networking command (Esc 2B00T←) issued. |                                   |   |   |  |  |
| Set DHCP mode <sup>24</sup>   | Esc X9 DH ←                       | Idhx9◀┛   | Enable or disable DHCP.                                   |  |  |
| View DHCP mode  | Esc DH ←                          | ष्ठ्रज्ञ⊶<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>I dhष्ठ्रज्⊶                       | View the DHCP mode setting.                               |  |  |
| Set IP address <sup>24</sup>  | Esc X40 CI ←                      | Ipi•X40   | Set the IP address to X40.                                |  |  |
| Read IP address   | Esc CI ←                          | <u>४४०</u> )<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Ipi∙¥४0्⊶                       | View the current IP address.                              |  |  |
| Set subnet mask <sup>24</sup>   | Esc X41 CS                        | Ips•X41 ←   | Set the subnet mask to <b>X41</b> .                       |  |  |
| View subnet mask  | Esc CS ←                          | X41<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Ips∙X41←                                 | View the subnet mask setting.                             |  |  |
| Set gateway IP address <sup>24</sup>  | Esc X42 CG←                       | Ipg <b>●X42</b> ◀┛  | Set the gateway IP address to X42.                        |  |  |
| View gateway IP address   | Esc CG <del>&lt;</del>            | <u>४४२</u><br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Ipg∙ <u>४४२</u> ←                 | View the gateway IP address setting.                      |  |  |
| Read MAC address  | Esc CH←                           | <u>X43</u> ◀┛<br>Iph●X43◀┛  | View unit Media Access Code<br>(MAC) address <b>X43</b> . |  |  |
| Query the number of open connections  | Esc CC ←                          | x44         In verbose mode 2 and 3:         Iccx44                         | View the number of open connections.                      |  |  |
| Reboot networking   | Esc 2B00T <del>&lt;</del>         | Boot2 <b>≁</b>  | Restart the network after IP setting or DHCP changes.     |  |  |
| Zeroconf (mDNS) Discove   | ery Services                      |   |   |  |  |
| Set Zeroconf (mDNS)<br>discovery services   | Esc X9 ZCON ←                     | Zcon⊠∮←   | Enable or disable Zeroconf (mDNS) discovery services.     |  |  |
| View Zeroconf (mDNS)<br>discovery services setting  | Esc ZCON <del>&lt; -</del>        | ਲ਼ਗ਼ੑੑੑ<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Zconਲ਼ਗ਼ੑੑੑੑ                         | View Zeroconf (mDNS) discovery services setting 💌.        |  |  |
| KEY:  |                                   |   |   |  |  |
| <b>X9</b> = Enable or disable   |                                   | $\emptyset$ = off or disabled (default for $1$ = on or enabled (default for | r DHCP mode commands)<br>Zeroconf commands)               |  |  |
| <b>X40</b> = IP address   |                                   | nnn.nnn.nnn (192.168.254.254 = default)                                     |   |  |  |
| X41 = Subnet mask   |                                   | <i>nnn.nnn.nnn</i> (255.255.255.Ø = default)                                |   |  |  |
| X42 = Gateway address   |                                   | nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn (Ø.Ø.Ø  | $\mathbf{U} \cdot \mathbf{Q} = \text{default}$            |  |  |
| X43 = MAC address   |                                   | 00-05-A6-xx-xx-xx   |   |  |  |
| X44 = Number of open co   | onnections                        | Ø- <maximum number="" of<="" td=""><td>open connections&gt;</td></maximum>  | open connections>   |  |  |

| Command   | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler)                 | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)   | Additional Description  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| IP Control Port Comma   | IP Control Port Commands, continued               |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| Passwords   | Passwords   |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| NOTES:  |   |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| The factory configure<br>number. Passwords  | ed passwords for all accou<br>are case-sensitive. | unts on this device have be  | en set to the device serial   |  |  |  |  |
| In the event of a rese  | et to factory defaults, the p                     | basswords are reset to no p  | bassword.   |  |  |  |  |
| • / \   * and space   | e are invalid in passwords                        |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| A password cannot   | be a single space.                                |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| Set administrator password  | Esc X52 CA  | Ipa• <mark>x52</mark> ←  | Set the administrator password to   |  |  |  |  |
| View administrator  | Esc CA+   | **** <b>حا</b> Or <b>حا</b>  | View the administrator password.  |  |  |  |  |
| password  |   | In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Ipa∙***≁ or Ipa≁   | If there is a valid password, the response is ****4. if there is no password, the response is 4 |  |  |  |  |
| Reset (clear) administrator<br>password   | Esc ● CA <del>&lt; -</del>                        | Ipa•←  | Reset or clear the administrator password.  |  |  |  |  |
| Set user password   | Esc X52 CU  | Ipu●x52  | Set the user password.  |  |  |  |  |
| View user password  | Esc CU  | **** <b>~J</b> Or <b>~J</b>  | View the user password. If there is   |  |  |  |  |
|   |   | In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Ipu∙***← or Ipu←   | a valid password, the response is **** - If there is no password, the response is               |  |  |  |  |
| Reset (clear) user<br>password  | Esc●CU←   | Ipu∙←  | Reset or clear the user password.   |  |  |  |  |
| Ethernet to RS-232 Ins  | ertion Parameters                                 |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| DTP RS-232 Insertion  |   |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| DTP RS-232 Input Insertion  | Parameters (Inputs 7 and                          | 8 only)  |   |  |  |  |  |
| Enable RS-232 input insertion   | EscIX1*ØLRPT←                                     | LrptI <u>X1</u> *Ø <b>←</b>  | Set input <b>x1</b> to RS-232<br>pass-through.  |  |  |  |  |
| Enable universal<br>asynchronous receiver-<br>transmitter (UART) input<br>insertion | EscIX11*1LRPT←                                    | LrptI <mark>X1</mark> *1 <b>←</b>  | Set input <b>X1</b> to Ethernet insertion.  |  |  |  |  |
| View input insertion setting  | EscIX1LRPT <del>←</del>                           | x69←<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>LrptIX1*x69←   | View insertion setting <b>X69</b> for input<br>X1.  |  |  |  |  |
| KEY:  |   |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| X1 = Input selection  |   | 7 or 8 only  |   |  |  |  |  |
| <b>X2</b> = Output selection  |   | 1 = Output 1A - HDMI (top c<br>2 = Output 1B - HDMI (botto<br>3 = Output 1C - DTP/HDBT                           | onnector)<br>m connector)   |  |  |  |  |
| <b>X52</b> = Password   |   | Up to 128 characters (/ \  | <pre>* and {space} are invalid in</pre>   |  |  |  |  |
| <b>X69</b> = DTP RS-232 insert  | ion mode  | <ul> <li>passwords)</li> <li>Ø = RS-232 pass-through, re (default)</li> <li>1 = IP insertion via UART</li> </ul> | ar panel captive screw connector  |  |  |  |  |

| Command  | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler) | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)   | Additional Description  |
|--|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| Ethernet to RS-232 Ins   | ertion (continued)                |  |   |
| DTP RS-232 Insertion (co   | ntinued)                          |  |   |
| DTP RS-232 Output Insertior  | Parameters (Output 3 [10          | ) only)  |   |
| Enable RS-232 output insertion   | EscO 3*ØLRPT←                     | Lrpt0 3*Ø <b>←</b>   | Set output <b>3</b> to RS-232<br>pass-through.  |
| Enable universal<br>asynchronous receiver-<br>transmitter (UART) output<br>insertion               | Esc0 3*1LRPT←                     | Lrpt03*1 <b>←</b>  | Set output 3 to Ethernet insertion.   |
| View output insertion setting  | Esc0 3LRPT ←                      | xe9←J<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Lrpt0 3*xe9←J   | View insertion setting <b>X69</b> for output<br><b>3</b> .  |
| DTP or HDBT Switch Positio   | n (TP Format)                     |  |   |
| View switch position (TP format)   | Esc0 3HDBT ←                      | xee<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Hdbt0 3*xee   | View DTP or HDBT switch position (selected TP format) <b>X68</b> .  |
| Configure Serial Port  |                                   |  |   |
| Set serial port parameters   | Esc X61 * X62, X63, X64, X65      | CP←  |   |
|  |                                   | Cpnx61 • Ccpx62, x63, x64  | , <u>X65</u>  |
|  |                                   |  | Set the RS-232 port parameters  |
| View the serial port parameters  | Esc X61CP ←                       | x62, x63, x64, x65<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Cpnx61●Ccpx62, x63, x64  | , <u>K65</u> ←  |
|  |                                   |  | View port parameters <b>x62</b> , <b>x63</b> , <b>x64</b> ,<br>and <b>x65</b> of port <b>x61</b> .            |
| <b>KEY:</b> X61       Serial port number         X62       = Baud rate                             |                                   | 1 = Remote port (3-pole capt<br>7 = UART** on DTP input 7<br>8 = UART on DTP input 8<br>9 = UART on DTP/HDBT outţ<br>**UART = universal asynchror<br>300, 600, 1200, 1800, 240<br>14400, 19200, 28800, 384   | ive screw)<br>out 1C<br>nous receiver-transmitter<br>10, 3600, 4800, 7200, 9600 (default<br>00, 57600, 115200 |
|  |                                   | NOTE: Via PCS and the<br>384ØØ, and 1152ØØ b   | web pages, only <b>9600, 19200</b> ,<br>aud rates are selectable.   |
| X63= ParityX64= Data bitsX65= Stop bitsX68= Twisted pair format<br>position)X69= DTP RS-232 insert | (DTP or HDBT switch<br>ion mode   | <ul> <li>Odd, Even, None, Mark, Space<br/>The default is None.</li> <li>7 or 8 (default)</li> <li>1 (default) or 2</li> <li>Ø = DTP format (Includes 12 None)</li> <li>1 = HDBaseT format</li> <li>Ø = RS-232 pass-through, read (default)</li> <li>1 = IP insertion via UART</li> </ul> | e (Only the first letter is required.)<br>VDC DTP remote power, default)<br>ar panel captive screw connector  |

| Command   | ASCII Command<br>(Host to Scaler) | Response<br>(Scaler to Host)   | Additional Description  |  |  |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|---|--|--|
| Ethernet to RS-232 Inse                           | ertion (continued)                |  |   |  |  |
| Ethernet Data Port                                |                                   |  |   |  |  |
| Set current connection port timeout <sup>24</sup> | EscØ*X66TC←                       | PtiØ* <mark>X66</mark> ←   | Set the number of seconds before the current port timeout to <b>X66</b> . |  |  |
| View current connection port timeout              | Esc∣ØTC←                          | x66<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>PtiØ*⊠66  | View the current port timeout setting (1666).                             |  |  |
| <b>NOTE:</b> The Set and Vicconnection.           | ew current connection por         | t timeout commands are a   | vailable only with an Ethernet  |  |  |
| Set global IP port timeout <sup>24</sup>          | Esc]1 *⊠66TC ←                    | Pti1* <mark>X66</mark> ◀┛  | Set the number of seconds before all ports time out to $\overline{x66}$ . |  |  |
| View global IP port timeout                       | Esc1TC←                           | x66<br>In verbose mode 2 and 3:<br>Pti1*x66←   | View the global port timeout setting (x66).                               |  |  |
| Set UART start point                              | Esc X67 MD ←                      | Pmd <mark>⊠67</mark> ◀┛  | Set current UART starting port to X67.                                    |  |  |
| View UART start point                             | Esc MD <del>&lt;</del>            | X67         In verbose mode 2 and 3:         Pmd[X67   | View the UART starting port number ( <b>[x67</b> ]).                      |  |  |
| KEY:  |                                   |  |   |  |  |
| ⊠66 = Port timeout<br>∞67 = Start point for UAR   | Γ ports                           | Set in increments of 10 seconds:<br>1 (10 seconds) to $65000$ (650,000 seconds)<br>Default = $30$ (300 seconds)<br>Controller RS-232 = port $2001$<br>Port number range = $1024 - 65533$ |   |  |  |

# **Configuration Software**

The Extron Product Configuration Software (PCS) offers another way to control the scalers via USB, or TCP/IP connection. The graphical interface includes the same functions as those on the device front panel with additional features that are available only through the software.

This section describes the software installation and communication (see **Internal Web Pages** on page 89 or see the *IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help file* for detailed control information). Topics in this section include:

- Software Installation
- Software Connection
- Software Overview

The control software is compatible with Microsoft Windows operating systems. The software program is available on the Extron **website**.

## **Software Installation**

To download PCS from the Extron website, locate it on the **Download Center** page or go to the **PCS** product page.

## Software Download Center Page

|  |  |  | 6         | 🤳 Contact Us 🝷 | 💄 Extron Insider 👻                    | 🚖 My Favorites  |
|--|--|--|-----------|----------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Extron PRO   | DDUCTS - TRAINING -  | RESOURCES -  | COMPANY - | DOWNLOAD -     | Power Search                          | Q               |
| Find Software & Dow<br>Downloads<br>Control System Drivers<br>DSP Templates<br>Firmware<br>HID Modules<br>2 Software | Inloads ><br>Featured Soft<br>Dante Controlle<br>DSP Configurat<br>Global Configur<br>Global Configur<br>Glu Configurat<br>GUI Configurat<br>GUI Designer<br>IP Intercom Hel<br>PCS Product Co<br>VCS Videowall<br>XTP System Co | ware<br>pr Software<br>ator<br>ator Plus<br>ator Professional<br>r<br>poDesk Software<br>nfiguration Software<br>fuguration Software |           |                | EDID Mana<br>EDID Manager<br>Software | ger 2.0<br>ment |
|  |  |  |           |                | Learn more >                          |                 |

## Figure 37. Download Center Page on the Extron Website

1. On the Extron website, select the **Download** tab (see figure 37, **1**).

2. Move the pointer to the **Software** link (see **figure 37**, **2**), on the previous page) in the **Downloads** column and click it.



## Figure 38. PCS Download Link

- 3. On the Download Center page, click the P link (see figure 38, 1).
- 4. If necessary, scroll to locate PCS from the list of available software programs and click the **Download** link to the right of the name (2).
- On the login page that appears next, fill in the required information to log in to www.extron.com (if you need an ID number, see your Extron representative).
- Follow the instructions on the subsequent screens to complete the software program installation. By default, the configuration program files are stored on your computer at: C:\Program Files (x86)\Extron\IN1606 and IN1608 Series.

If there is not already an Extron folder in your Program Files (x86) folder, the installation program creates it as well.

# **Software Connection**

Open the Product Configuration Software program from the **Start** menu or desktop shortcut. The **Extron Product Configuration Software** window opens with the **Device Discovery** panel open. Connect to the scaler using the **Device Discovery** panel or the **TCP/IP** panel.

| Device Discovery | Device Discovery       |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|------------------|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|------------|-------|--|--|
| 700/10           | Model                  | IP Address           | Device Name     | Connection |       |  |  |
| TCP/IP           | IN1608 ×i (60-1238-81) | 192.168.254.254 Edit | IN1608-0A-0D-F3 | TCP/IP     |       |  |  |
|                  | IN1608 xi (60-1238-81) |                      | IN1608-0A-0D-F3 | USB        |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  |                        |                      |                 |            |       |  |  |
|                  | Where are my devices?  |                      |                 | Cor        | nnect |  |  |
|                  | Where are my devices?  |                      |                 | Cor        | nnect |  |  |





software Release Notes, also available on the Extron website.

## **Device Discovery Panel**

The **Device Discovery** panel displays accessible Extron devices connected directly to the PC or to a LAN or WAN. Devices are identified and sorted by model, IP address, device name, or connection method.

| IP Address<br>1238-81) 192.168.254.254 | Device Name          | Connection |
|--|----------------------|------------|
| 1238-81) 192.168.254.254               |                      |            |
|  | Edit IN1608-0A-0D-F3 | TCP/IP     |
| 1238-81) -                             | IN1608-0A-0D-F3      | USB        |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |
|  |                      |            |

#### Figure 40. Device Discovery Panel

#### To sort the list of available devices:

- **1.** Click the **Device Discovery** tab (see figure 41, **①**).
- 2. Click the desired column heading (2) to sort it in ascending or descending order.

#### To connect to a device:

- 1. Click the **Device Discovery** tab (1).
- 2. Select the desired device (3).
- 3. Click the **Connect** button (**G**). A new device configuration tab opens.

## To edit communication settings from the Device Discovery panel:

- 1. Click the **Device Discovery** tab (1).
- 2. Click the Edit button of the desired device (4).

The Communication Settings dialog box opens (see the image at right).

See **Ethernet settings** on page 127 for configuration details.

| Communication Settings             |
|------------------------------------|
| IN1608 xi SA (60-1238-82)          |
| Use DHCP                           |
| (Obtain IP address automatically)  |
| IP Address: 192.168.254.254        |
| Device Name: IN1608-xi-SA-13-BB-ED |
| Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0           |
| Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0           |
| DNS Server: 0.0.0.0                |
| MAC Address; 00-05-A6-13-BB-ED     |
|                                    |
|                                    |
| Apply Apply and Connect Cancel     |

- **3.** Finalize the settings in one of these ways:
  - Click the **Apply** button to accept the changes and return to the **Device Discovery** panel.
  - Click the **App1y and Connect** button to accept the changes and connect to the selected device. A new device configuration tab opens.
  - Click the **Cancel** button to cancel any pending changes and return to the **Device Discovery** panel.

## **TCP/IP Panel**

The TCP/IP panel connects PCS to a specific device through Ethernet.

| Device Discovery | TCP/IP  |
|------------------|---|
| TCP/IP           | IP Address:       192.168.254.254         IP assword: |
|                  | Connect   |

#### Figure 41. TCP/IP Panel

- 1. Click the TCP / IP tab (see figure 42, 1).
- 2. In the **IP Address** field (**2**), enter the IP address of the desired device.
- 3. If required, enter the device password in the **Password** field (3).

## NOTES:

- Select the **Show Characters** checkbox (**5**) to display the password characters.
- The factory configured passwords for all accounts on this device have been set to the device serial number. Passwords are case sensitive. In the event of a reset to factory defaults, the passwords are set to no password.
- 4. In the **Telnet Port** field (**4**), enter the Telnet port of the desired device.
- 5. Click the **Connect** button (**6**). A new device tab opens.

## **Offline Device Preview**

Opening a new device tab for an offline device displays the interface and configuration options for the chosen model without connecting to it. However, settings cannot be changed.

#### To open a scaler device tab:

1. From the Configuration File drop-down menu, select New Configuration File.



#### Figure 42. Configuration File Drop-Down Menu

The New Configuration File dialog box opens.

| PCS | New Configuration File            | × |
|-----|-----------------------------------|---|
|     | Search by model                   | Q |
|     | Device Models                     |   |
|     | IN1608 SA (60-1238-02)            | * |
|     | IN1608 SA (60-1238-52)            |   |
|     | IN1608 SA HDBT (60-1238-72)       |   |
|     | IN1608 xi (60-1238-81)            |   |
|     | IN1608 xi IPCP MA 70 (60-1238-86) |   |
|     | IN1608 xi IPCP SA (60-1238-85)    |   |
| U   | IN1608 xi MA 70 (60-1238-83)      |   |
|     | IN1608 xi SA (60-1238-82)         |   |
|     | MediaPort 200                     |   |
|     | MPS 601                           |   |
|     | MPS 602 (60-1313-01)              | - |
|     | Configure Cancel                  |   |

#### Figure 43. New Configuration File Dialog Box

- 2. Select the desired device model from the Device Models list (see figure 44, 1). In figure 44, IN1608 xi MA 70 was selected.
- 3. Click the **Configure** button (2). A new offline device configuration tab opens.

# **Software Overview**

**NOTE:** For details about specific software features, see the *IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help* file.

| + ▼ IN1608 xi (60-1238-81) ▼<br>AV Controls ⓒ | <b>₩</b> .            | m           |             |                 |                |                |                    |                     |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------------|---|-----------------------|
| AV Inputs                                     | Input/Output Config   | EDID Min    | der Ima     | age Settings    | Size           | and Posi       | tion               | Audio Config        | Preset Management                                 | General Settings      |
| Input 1                                       | Input/Output C        | Configurati | on          |                 |                |                |                    |                     |   |                       |
| O Input 2                                     | Input Configuration — |             |             |                 |                |                |                    |                     | Output Configuration                              |                       |
| Input 3                                       | Inp                   | ut          | Signal Type | Aspect<br>Ratio | Auto-<br>Image | Auto<br>Memory | HDCP<br>Authorized | Film<br>Detect      | Resolution: 1080p                                 | •                     |
| Input 4                                       | 1 Input 1             |             | RGB -       | Fill 🔻          |                |                |                    |                     | Refresh Rate: 60                                  | •                     |
| Input 6                                       | 2 Junit 2             |             | [DCD        | [ [ ] ]         |                |                |                    |                     | Output Format —                                   | <u></u>               |
| Input 7                                       | 2 Input 2             |             | KGB 🔻       | Fill            |                |                | -                  | <b>V</b>            | HDMI 1A: Auto                                     | •                     |
| Input 8                                       | 3 Input 3             |             | HDMI/DVI    | Fill •          |                |                |                    |                     | HDMI 1B: Auto                                     | •                     |
| Breakaway Audio                               | 4 Input 4             |             |             |                 |                |                |                    |                     | Out 1C: Auto                                      | •                     |
| Active Input                                  | 4 Input 4             |             | HDMI/DVI    |                 |                | •              | •                  | •                   | Switch Transition                                 |                       |
| No Signal No Signal                           | 5 Input 5             |             | HDMI/DVI    | Fill 🔻          |                |                |                    |                     | <ul> <li>Fade Through Bla</li> <li>Cut</li> </ul> | ck                    |
| Auto-Image Freeze                             | 6 Input 6             |             | HDMI/DVI    | Fill            |                |                |                    |                     | Test Patterns                                     |                       |
| Outputs                                       |                       |             |             | []              |                |                |                    |                     | Used to optimize settings a                       | at the display device |
| 1080p @60<br>1A 1B 1C                         | 7 Input 7             |             | DTP         | Fill 🔻          |                | ✓              |                    | <ul><li>✓</li></ul> |   |                       |
| HDMI HDMI DTP                                 | 8 Input 8             |             | DTP         | Fill 🔻          |                |                | 7                  |                     |   |                       |
| No Display   No Display   No Display          |                       |             |             |                 |                |                |                    |                     |   |                       |
| Audio Mute Video Mute                         |                       |             |             |                 |                |                |                    |                     | Color Bars  | •                     |
| AV Mute Sync Mute                             |                       |             |             |                 |                |                |                    |                     |   |                       |

Figure 44. Online Device Tab

Each device tab has a **Device** drop-down menu for configuration options. The **Software** menu contains software configuration and information options.

## **Software Menu**

The Software menu (see figure 46) contains options pertaining to PCS settings.

| Show Expanded Device Tabs |
|---------------------------|
| Software Settings         |
| Tutorial                  |
| Extron PCS Help           |
| About Extron PCS          |
| Exit                      |

Figure 45. Software Menu

#### **Show Expanded Device Tabs**

This option displays the device IP address or connection method in the **Device** tab.

From the Software menu, select **Show Expanded Device Tabs**.

IN1608 xi IPCP 5A (60-1238-85) ▼ USB 0

#### Figure 46. Expanded Device Tab (IN1608 xi Connected through USB)

## **Software Settings**

This option resets all disabled confirmation dialogs to the default settings.

1. From the Software menu, select **Software Settings**. The Software Settings dialog box opens.

| Close |
|-------|
|       |

#### Figure 47. Software Settings Dialog Box

Click the Re-enable Confirmation Dialogs button (1). The dialog box closes and the reset is complete. Click the Close button (2) to close the dialog box without re-enabling the confirmation dialogs.

## **Tutorial**

This option displays a general overview of where to find features in the PCS framework.

- 1. From the Software menu, select Tutorial. The Tutorial dialog box opens.
- 2. Click the I Get It! button to close the dialog box.

#### **Extron PCS Help**

This options opens the PCS help file for general PCS operations. For product-specific help files, see **Help** on page 88.

From the Software menu, select Extron PCS Help.

## **About Extron PCS**

This option contains information about the current PCS version.

1. From the Software menu, select About Extron PCS. The About - Extron PCS dialog box opens.



Figure 48. About - Extron PCS Dialog Box

2. Click the **Details** button (see figure 49, **①**, for more information).

To display details about third-party software packages and associated licensing, click **Licensing** (2).

**3.** Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box.

## Exit

This option disconnects PCS from connected devices and closes the application.

1. From the Software menu, select Exit. If device tabs are open, the Exit dialog box opens.



## Figure 49. Exit Dialog Box

If necessary, click the Close Session(s) and Exit button (see figure 50, 1) to disconnect the software from connected devices, close all offline device tabs, and close the software. Click the Cancel button (2) to leave the software open.

## **Device Menu**

The Device drop-down menu contains options pertaining to device connection, configuration, and information. For details about all these options, see the *IN1606* and *IN1608 Series PCS Help File*.

| IN1608 xi IPCP 5A (60-1238-85) |   |                                    |   |
|--------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|---|
| 058.0                          | C | Disconnect                         |   |
|                                | S | Settings                           | ٠ |
|                                | F | Reset Device                       |   |
|                                | E | Backup                             |   |
|                                | F | Restore                            | ۲ |
|                                | ι | Jpdate Firmware                    | ۲ |
|                                | I | N1608 xi IPCP SA (60-1238-85) Help | b |
|                                | A | About This Module                  |   |

#### Figure 50. Device Menu

 Disconnect — Disconnects the PCS program from the connected device and closes the device tab.

**NOTE:** If a device is already disconnected, the **Disconnect** option is disabled until the device is connected.

- **Settings** Opens a submenu containing the following options:
  - **Hardware Settings** Displays the Hardware Settings dialog box containing device information and side tabs that enable you to change the device name, internal clock, and password of the connected device.

**NOTE:** The factory configured passwords for all accounts on this device have been set to the device serial number. Passwords are case sensitive. In the event of a reset to factory defaults, the passwords are set to no password.

It also contains an **Edit Communication Settings** button, which provides an alternative method of accessing the Communication Settings dialog box.

- **Communication Settings** Opens the Communication Settings dialog box on which you can change IP settings of the connected device.
- Reset Device Opens the Reset Device dialog box, which contains selectable
  modes for resetting the connected device. In addition, the Communication Settings
  dialog box contains the unit information that is also displayed in the Hardware
  Settings dialog box.
- Backup Enables you to export all audio, video, and communication settings of the connected device to the PC. This exported configuration can be saved as a backup file (with a .estz extension), or used to replicate settings from one device to other devices of the same model. When restoring a configuration, you can select specific device settings.

- **Restore** Opens a submenu containing the following restore options:
  - **Restore this Device** Lets you load a saved configuration for the same model to the connected device.
  - **Restore to Multiple Devices** Lets you load a saved configuration file for the same model to multiple devices on the network.

**NOTE:** The connected devices must be connected via LAN.

Saved configurations may include audio, video, and communication settings.

• **Update Firmware** — Opens a submenu from which you can select to upload firmware from the host device to the connected device or to multiple devices.

**NOTE:** If necessary, download new firmware from the Extron website (see **Downloading Updated Firmware** on page 136).

- Update Firmware to this Device... Uploads firmware from the host device to the connected device only.
- Update Firmware to Multiple Devices... Uploads firmware to multiple devices on the network.

**NOTE:** The connected devices must be connected via LAN.

- **Help** Opens the *IN1606 and IN1608 Series PCS Help* file in a separate window.
- **About This Module** Opens About This Module dialog box, which contains the module part number and firmware version of the connected device.

# **Internal Web Pages**

The scalers feature an on-board web server, displayed as a set of internal web pages. These pages allow for control and operation of the scaler through a LAN or WAN connection. Use a web browser to view the pages on a PC connected to the scaler.

NOTE: The scaler internal web pages do not support compatibility mode in Microsoft Internet Explorer<sup>®</sup> (see "Turning Off Compatibility Mode"). Extron recommends using Mozilla<sup>®</sup> Firefox<sup>®</sup> or Google Chrome<sup>™</sup>.

This section gives an overview of the internal web pages, which are always available and cannot be erased or overwritten. Topics in this section include:

- Using the Internal Web Pages
- AV Controls Panel
- Configuration Pages
- Hardware Pages

# **Using the Internal Web Pages**

## Accessing the Internal Web Pages

- Connect the scaler to a LAN or WAN using the rear panel RJ-45 LAN connector (see figure 13, A), on page 19). For IPCP models, you can also use one of the AV LAN ports (see figure 15 on page 20).
- 2. Open a web browser on a connected PC.
- 3. Enter the IP address of the device in the browser Address field.

NOTE: The default IP address is 192.168.254.254.

- 4. Press the **<Enter>** key on the keyboard.
- 5. The scaler checks if the device is password-protected.

**NOTE:** The factory configured passwords for all accounts on this device have been set to the device serial number. Passwords are case sensitive. In the event of a reset to factory defaults, the passwords are set to no password.

- If the device is not password-protected, the web pages open.
- If the device is password-protected, enter a user name (user or admin) in the User Name field and the password in the **Password** field when prompted.
- 6. Click the **OK** button.

## **Navigating the Internal Web Pages**

The internal web pages open with two main tabs: **Configuration** (see **figure 54**, **1**), on page 93) and **Hardware** (see **figure 81**, **1**), on page 125). Below the tabs is a global navigation bar with icons that open various pages for configuration settings and information. Each page is separated into the AV Controls panel and the individual page.

## **Turning Off Compatibility Mode**

The internal web pages do not support compatibility mode in Microsoft Internet Explorer.

#### To check compatibility view settings:

From the Tools menu of the browser, select **Compatibility View Settings**. The **Compatibility View Settings** dialog box opens.

Be sure that the **Display all websites in Compatibility View** checkbox is **clear**, and that the IP address of the scaler is **not** in the list of websites that have been added to Compatibility View.

# **AV Controls Panel**

The AV Controls panel controls AV settings such as input selection, performing a onetime Auto-Image to an input, video and audio mute, and image freeze. At the bottom of the panel is a summary of the current active input and output status, including signal format and HDCP status.

| <b>1</b>              |
|-----------------------|
| Auto-Image            |
| <b>2</b> AV Inputs    |
| Input 1               |
| Input 2               |
| O Input 3             |
| Input 4               |
| Input 5               |
| Input 6               |
| Input 7               |
| Input 8               |
| Breakaway Audio       |
| Video Mute Audio Mute |
| O AV Mute Freeze      |
| Active Input          |
| 1080p @60.00Hz        |
| Output                |
| 720p @60Hz            |
| 1A 1B 1C DTP          |
|                       |

Figure 51. AV Controls Panel

The unlocked icon (see **figure 52**, **(3)**, on the previous page) indicates that an input or output is not HDCP-encrypted. The lock with a check mark icon (**(9)**) indicates that an input or output is HDCP-encrypted.

**NOTE:** This panel can be hidden or revealed on any page by clicking on the arrow button in the upper-right corner of the panel.

## **Auto-Image Button**

Click the **Auto-Image** button (1) to execute a one-time Auto-Image on the currently selected input.

## **AV Inputs Buttons**

Click an input button (2) to select an input. As a new input is selected, the summary within the panel changes to reflect the new statuses.

**NOTE:** The signal indicators on the AV input buttons become green when a signal is present on the corresponding input and gray when there is no signal present.

## **Breakaway Audio Checkbox**

Select the **Breakaway Audio** checkbox (**figure 52**, **3**), and figure 53, **1**) to enable audio breakaway. The input buttons separate into two columns: Video and Audio.

|   | AV Controls |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|-------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|   | Auto-Image  |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | Video Audio |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0 | Input 1     | Input 1    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0 | Input 2     | Input 2    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0 | Input 3     | Input 3    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0 | Input 4     | Input 4    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0 | Input 5     | Input 5    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0 | Input 6     | Input 6    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0 | Input 7     | Input 7    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0 | Input 8     | Input 8    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|   | Break       | away Audio |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## Figure 52. AV Controls Panel with Breakaway Audio Enabled

- In the Video column, click the input button associated with the video to be used.
- In the Audio column, click the input button associated with the audio to be used.

## NOTES:

- Audio breakaway is not available to inputs configured for digital audio formats.
- Video breakaway is not available from inputs configured for digital video formats.

## **Video and Audio Mute and Freeze Buttons**

- Click the Video Mute button (see figure 52, 4), on page 90) to mute only the video signal. The button turns red.
- Click the Audio Mute button (5) to globally mute only the audio. The button turns red.
- Click the **AV Mute** button (**6**) to mute both video and audio simultaneously. The button turns red, along with the **Video Mute** and **Audio Mute** buttons.
- Click the **Freeze** button (**7**) to freeze the current video frame. The button turns blue.

To unmute or unfreeze any signal, click the appropriate button. The button reverts to the default color, indicating the signal has been unmuted or unfrozen.

**NOTE:** Changing inputs unfreezes a signal as well.

## **Input and Output Information**

If available, the Active Input panel displays the resolution and refresh rate of the active input signal as well as the HDCP status.

| Symbol    | Definition                           |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|
| HDCP      | The signal is HDCP encrypted.        |
| ſ         | The signal is not encrypted.         |
| -         | Unable to determine the HDCP status. |
| No Signal | There is no signal detected.         |

If available, the **Outputs** panel displays the resolution and refresh rate of the output as well as the HDCP status of all connected outputs.

| Symbol     | Definition                           |
|------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>₽</b> ∕ | The display is HDCP compliant.       |
| 23         | The display is not HDCP compliant.   |
| -          | Unable to determine the HDCP status. |
| No Display | There is no display detected.        |

# **Configuration Pages**

The configuration pages contain options for input and output configuration, EDID management, image settings, image size and position, audio configuration, preset management, and device settings.



Figure 53. Global Navigation Bar - Configuration

## **Input and Output Configuration Page**

Click the **Input/Output Config** icon on the Global Navigation Bar (see figure 54, **2**), on the previous page) to open this page. It contains panels for input configuration and output configuration.

## **Input Configuration panel**

The Input Configuration panel consists of user configurable fields for each input. These include Input (naming), Signal Type, Aspect Ratio, automatic Auto-Image, Auto Memory, HDCP Authorized (status), and Film Detect.

| - Input Co | nfiguration —      |                                 |                      |                     |                             |                     |                     |
|------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
|            | D <sub>Input</sub> | <b>3</b> <sub>Signal Type</sub> | 3<br>Aspect<br>Ratio | 4<br>Auto-<br>Image | G <sub>Auto</sub><br>Memory | HDCP<br>Authorized  | 7<br>Film<br>Detect |
| 1          | Input 1            | RGB                             | Fill 🗸               |                     |                             | -                   |                     |
| 2          | Input 2            | RGB                             | Fill 💌               |                     |                             |                     |                     |
| 3          | Input 3            | HDMI/DVI                        | Fill 👻               |                     |                             | <ul><li>✓</li></ul> |                     |
| 4          | Input 4            | HDMI/DVI                        | Fill 👻               |                     |                             | <b>V</b>            |                     |
| 5          | Input 5            | HDMI/DVI                        | Fill 👻               |                     |                             | <b>V</b>            |                     |
| 6          | Input 6            | HDMI/DVI                        | Fill 👻               |                     |                             | <b>V</b>            |                     |
| 7          | Input 7            | DTP                             | Fill 👻               |                     | V                           | <b>V</b>            |                     |
| 8          | Input 8            | DTP                             | Fill                 |                     |                             | <b>V</b>            |                     |
|            |                    |                                 |                      |                     |                             |                     |                     |

Figure 54. Input Configuration Panel

## Input (renaming)

By default, the name associated with an input channel is Input *<number>*. To rename an input, click inside the desired input field (see **figure 55**, **1**), on the previous page) and enter the desired name to identify the input. Input names have a 16-character limit.

**NOTE:** Entering a single space character resets the name of the input to the default.

#### Signal type

From the **Signal Type** drop-down menu (2) select the signal type for inputs 1 and 2 from **RGB** (default), **YUV**, **RGBcvS**, **S-Video**, and **Composite**. For all other inputs, HDMI/DVI is the only available signal type.

#### Aspect ratio

From the Aspect Ratio drop-down menu (3), select Fill or Follow.

- **Fill** Scales the input signal to fill the entire video output.
- **Follow** Follows the signal aspect ratio, with respect to the current output resolution setting. Black letter box or pillar box bars may be applied for aspect ratio compensation.

#### Auto-Image

Select the **Auto-Image** checkbox (4) of the desired input to enable an automatic Auto-Image to an input. When enabled, Auto-Image is applied whenever there is a change in the input sync. Auto-Image attempts to size and center the input signal based on the aspect ratio setting.

By default, the Auto-Image threshold is 25% brightness. Analog video signals greater than the threshold are considered active video. To change the threshold value, use SIS commands (see **Auto-Image Threshold Value** on page 59).

#### **Auto Memory**

Select the **Auto Memory** checkbox ((5)) of the desired input to enable the Auto Memory (see the **Auto Memory and Auto-Image Interaction table** on page 40 for a summary of the interaction between Auto Memory and Auto-Image). Auto Memory recalls input and image settings for signals that have previously been applied. When Auto Memory is disabled, the scaler treats every newly applied input as a new source.

#### **HDCP** Authorized

Select the **HDCP Authorized** checkbox (**6**) to enable or disable the HDCP Authorized feature (inputs 3 through 8). This feature determines if a digital input reports as an HDCP authorized sink to a source.

**NOTE:** This option is not available for analog inputs 1 and 2.

For source devices that require encryption, enable HDCP Authorized. If HDCP Authorized is disabled for sources that require encryption (for example, a Blu-ray player), the output is muted or a warning message is displayed.

Some source devices may encrypt their output even if the source material does not require HDCP encryption, preventing content from being displayed on a non-HDCP compliant display. Disable HDCP Authorized to allow the output of the scaler to remain unencrypted.

#### Film Detect

Select the **Film Detect** checkbox (7) of the desired input to enable automatic 3:2 and 2:2 film pulldown detection for NTSC, PAL, SECAM, and 1080i input signals.

## **Output Configuration panel**

The **Output Configuration** panel contains controls for output resolution and rate, format settings, switch transitions, and available test pattern selection.

| - Output Configuration                   |                               |   |  |  |  |
|--|-------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| Resolution:                              | 1080p (1920x1080)             | ~ |  |  |  |
| Refresh Rate:                            | 60 Hz                         | ~ |  |  |  |
| <sup>©</sup> Output Format               |                               |   |  |  |  |
| HDMI 1A:                                 | Auto                          | ~ |  |  |  |
| HDMI 1B:                                 | Auto                          | ~ |  |  |  |
| Out 1C:                                  | Auto                          | ~ |  |  |  |
| Switch Transition     Fade Through Black |                               |   |  |  |  |
| O Cu                                     | ◯ Cut                         |   |  |  |  |
| •<br>Test Patterns –                     | • Test Patterns               |   |  |  |  |
| Used to optimize se                      | ettings at the display device |   |  |  |  |
|  |                               |   |  |  |  |
| Color Bars 🗸                             |                               |   |  |  |  |
|  |                               |   |  |  |  |

Figure 55. Output Configuration

#### Resolution

From the **Resolution** drop-down menu (see figure 56, **1**), select the applicable output resolution.

#### **Refresh rate**

From the Refresh Rate drop-down menu (2), select the applicable output refresh rate.

## **Output formats**

From the HDMI 1A, HDMI 1B, or Out 1C drop-down menu (3), select the applicable digital signal format.

## **Switch transitions**

On the Switch Transitions panel (see figure 56, 4, on the previous page), select one of the following radio buttons:

- Fade Through Black Fades video to a black screen before switching to the newly selected video.
- **Cut** Switches video directly to the newly selected input.

## **Test patterns**

To aid display device setup and optimization, select a test pattern from the Test Patterns drop-down menu (5) under the preview window (see Test Pattern on page 39 for more details).



## **EDID Minder Page**

EDID Minder is a management process that manages the EDID information between the scaler and one or more input sources. Click the **EDID Minder** icon (see **figure 54**, **3**, on page 93) on the **Global Navigation** Bar to open the EDID Minder page.



Figure 57. EDID Minder Page

The EDID properties currently assigned to each input are displayed in the list of inputs. The audio input format listed in an EDID is determined by the audio input format selected on the Audio Configuration page (unless a custom EDID is used).

| Audio Input Format | Audio Capabilities Listed in EDID |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| None               | No audio                          |
| Analog             | No audio                          |
| LPCM-2Ch           | 2-channel audio                   |
| Multi-Ch           | Multi-channel audio               |
| LPCM-2Ch Auto      | 2-channel audio                   |
| Multi-Ch Auto      | Multi-channel audio               |

If desired, the scaler can store up to eight custom EDID files. Audio settings from custom EDID files take priority over current settings on the input.

**NOTE:** If an analog custom EDID file is assigned to a digital input or a digital custom EDID file is assigned to an analog input, the display may not appear correctly.

## **EDID** filters

Use the **Filter** tab to limit the number of available EDID displayed in the Available EDIDs and Connected Outputs panels.

- 1. From the **Resolution** drop-down menu (see **figure 58**, **1** on the previous page), select a specific resolution or Any.
- 2. From the Refresh Rate drop-down menu (2), select a specific refresh rate or Any.

## **EDID** assignment

#### To assign EDID to selected inputs:

- 1. From the inputs group box (table of inputs) on the right, select the checkboxes for the desired inputs (6).
- 2. From the Available EDIDs or Connected Outputs panel (3) or (4) on the left, select the desired EDID.
- **3.** From the inputs group box, click the **Assign** button (?) to assign EDID to the selected input or inputs.

#### To assign EDID to all inputs:

- 1. From the Connected Outputs or Available EDIDs panel (3 or 4), select an EDID.
- 2. From the inputs group box, click the **Assign to All** button (8).

**NOTE:** Checked or unchecked inputs are ignored and the EDID is assigned to all inputs.

#### To match the selected inputs to the current output resolution:

Matching the output resolution is the default value for all inputs.

- 1. From the inputs group box (table of inputs) on the right, select the checkboxes for the desired inputs (6).
- 2. In the Output Resolution panel, click the Match Output button (5).

## **EDID Library and EDID files**

The EDID Library contains the list of available EDID files.

## To add EDID files to the EDID Library:

- 1. Click the **Upload EDID to** [*Scaler*] button (see **figure 58**, **9**, on page 96). The Browse Add EDID to Library window opens.
- 2. Navigate to the desired EDID file location and select the EDID file.

**NOTE:** Valid EDID files have a .bin file extension.

**3.** Click the **Open** button. The EDID is added to the **Available EDIDs** pane (**4**).

## To save configurations as EDID files to a PC:

- From the Connected Outputs (3), Available EDIDs panel (4), or the Inputs list (6), right-click on an EDID or input.
- 2. Select Save EDID to PC.
- 3. Click the **OK** button to save the file.

**NOTE:** Saving a factory scaler EDID exports an HDMI, LPCM-2Ch EDID to the PC. The file is saved as a **.bin** file.

## Image Settings Page

The Image Settings page adjusts signal sampling and picture control settings, saves and recalls user and input presets, and applies overscan settings. Click the Image Settings icon (see figure 54, 4) on page 93) on the Global Navigation Bar to open the Image Settings page.

| ignal Sampling                                  |                        | - Overscan  |  |
|---|------------------------|---|--|
| ptimize the input signal to the scaler for put. | the currently selected | Overscan can automatically be applied to SMPTE in<br>and 2k). | puts (NTSC, PAL, 480p, 576p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p, |
|   | <u>Min Max</u>         | HDMI/DVI: 0.0%  | S-Video: 2.5%                                    |
| Active Lines: 1080                              | * 824 1336             |   |  |
| Active Pixels: 1920                             | * 1409 2422            | RGBCVS: 2.5%  | YUV: 2.5%  |
| 1920  | V 1400 2452            | RGB: 0.0%   | Composite: 2.5%                                  |
| Horizontal Start: 128                           | 0 255                  |   |  |
|   | <b>A A A</b>           | Input Presets   | User Presets                                     |
| vertical start: 128                             | ✓ 0 255                | Savor   | Saver:   |
| Total Pixels: NA                                | * 1688 2712            | -Signal type  | -Picture controls                                |
|   |                        | -Signal sampling<br>-Picture controls                         |  |
| Pixel Phase: NA                                 | 0 63                   |   |  |
|   |                        | 1 INPUT PRESET 001  | ∃ Input 1  |
| Auto-Image Auto-Image & Fill                    | Auto-Image & Follow    | 2 INPUT PRESET 002  |  |
|   | *Donotoc dofault value | 3 INPUT PRESET 003  | ⊎ Input 2  |
| icture Controls                                 | Denotes default value  | 4 INPUT PRESET 004  | 🗉 Input 3  |
| 0   | 127                    | 5 [unassigned]  | 1 USER PRESET 01                                 |
| Brightness:                                     | 64                     | 6 [unassigned]  | 2 USER PRESET 02                                 |
|   |                        | 7 [unassigned]  | 3 [unassigned]                                   |
| Contrast:                                       | 64                     | 8 [unassigned]  | 4 [unassigned]                                   |
|   |                        | 9 [unassigned]  | 5 [unassigned]                                   |
|   | NA 🗘                   | 10 [unassigned]   | 6 [unassigned]                                   |
|   |                        | 11 [unassigned]   | 7 [unassigned]                                   |
|   | NA                     | 12 [unassigned]   | 8 [unassigned]                                   |
|   |                        | 13 [unassigned]   | 9 [unassigned]                                   |

Figure 58. Image Settings Page

## **Signal Sampling panel**

Signal sampling optimizes the input signal to the scaler for the currently selected input.

| - Signal Sampling                                     |            |            |
|---|------------|------------|
| Optimize the input signal to the scaler for the curre | ently se   | lected     |
| 0   | <u>Min</u> | <u>Max</u> |
| Active Lines: 1080 🔷 *                                | 824        | 1336       |
| Active Pixels: 1920 *                                 | 1408       | 2432       |
| Horizontal Start: 128                                 | 0          | 255        |
| Vertical Start: 128                                   | 0          | 255        |
| Total Pixels: NA                                      | 1688       | 2712       |
| Pixel Phase: NA                                       | 0          | 63         |
| Auto-Image Auto-Image & Fill Auto-I                   | mage &     | Follow     |

#### Figure 59. Signal Sampling Panel

To manually adjust signal sampling settings, enter a value within the Min and Max values displayed to the right of each adjustable setting (see figure 60, **1**) or click the **Up** or **Down** arrows. An asterisk beside a chosen value for a signal sampling setting indicates that it is a default value for the applied video signal (for example, see Active Lines in figure 60).

#### To automatically adjust these settings, perform one of the following:

- Click the Auto-Image button (2) to perform a one-time Auto-Image.
- Click the Auto-Image & Fill button (③) to perform a one-time Auto-Image and fill the entire video output (ignores aspect ratio setting).
- Click the Auto-Image & Follow button (④) to perform a one-time Auto-Image and to maintain the aspect ratio of the input signal (ignores aspect ratio setting).

## **Picture Controls panel**

The Picture Controls panel shows adjustable image settings for the selected input.

| Picture Controls |          |      |  |
|------------------|----------|------|--|
| Brightness:      | <b>C</b> | 63   |  |
| Contrast:        | C        | 63 🗘 |  |
| Color:           |          | NA 🗘 |  |
| Tint:            |          | NA 🗘 |  |
| Detail:          | •        | 63 🗘 |  |

#### Figure 60. Picture Controls Panel

To adjust the picture settings, click and drag the associated slider for any available image setting (brightness, contrast, color, tint, or detail) to the desired value.

Alternatively, enter a value within the field associated with the image setting, or click the **Up** and **Down** arrows to change the value in the field.

## **Overscan panel**

Overscan mode zooms and crops SMPTE input resolutions to mask edge effects and ancillary data common in broadcast signals. Issuing an Auto-Image with overscan enabled runs an Auto Phase routine (YUV and RGB only) and centers and sizes the input.

| - Overscan                  |                 |      |                                |              |                    |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|------|--------------------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| Overscan can autom and 2k). | atically be app | lied | to SMPTE inputs (NTSC, PAL, 48 | 00p, 576p, 7 | 20p, 1080i, 1080p, |
| HDMI/DVI:                   | 0.0%            | ~    | S-Video:                       | 2.5%         | ~                  |
| RGBcvS:                     | 2.5%            | ~    | YUV:                           | 2.5%         | ~                  |
| RGB:                        | 0.0%            | ~    | Composite:                     | 2.5%         | ~                  |
|                             |                 |      |                                |              |                    |

#### Figure 61. Overscan Panel

For each input signal type, select a value from the corresponding drop-down menu.

**NOTE:** Setting a value of 0% disables overscan for the corresponding input format.

## **Input Presets and User Presets panels**

Presets save output settings to be recalled through RS-232, USB, or Ethernet (see the following table for a comparison of saved settings for input and user presets).

| Settings Included within Presets |             |              |  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|-------------|--------------|--|--|--|
| Setting                          | User Preset | Input Preset |  |  |  |
| Horizontal and vertical start    |             | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Active lines                     |             | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Pixel phase                      |             | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Active pixels                    |             | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Total pixels                     |             | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Input type                       |             | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Audio gain and attenuation       |             | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Film detect                      |             | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Brightness and contrast          | Saved       | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Color and tint                   | Saved       | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Detail                           | Saved       | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Image size and position          | Saved       | Saved        |  |  |  |
| Preset name                      | Saved       | Saved        |  |  |  |

## NOTES:

- User presets can be saved on one input resolution and recalled on a different one. Input presets can only be recalled on the same input resolution that was present when the preset was saved.
- The controls in the Input Presets and User Presets panels are duplicates of those provided on the Preset Management page (see Preset Management Page on page 120).
| - Input Pre<br>Saves:<br>-Signal<br>-Signal<br>-Pictur | sets<br>  type<br>  sampling<br>e controls |          | User Presets<br>Saves:<br>-Picture controls |                     |       |  |
|--|--|----------|---|---------------------|-------|--|
| 1  | INPUT PRESET 001                           | <b>A</b> | ⊌<br>I⊒ Input                               | 1                   | •     |  |
| 2  | INPUT PRESET 002                           |          | 1   | USER PRESET 01      |       |  |
| 3  | INPUT PRESET 003                           |          | 2   | USER PRESET 02      |       |  |
| 4  | INPUT PRESET 004                           |          | 3   | USER PRESET 03      |       |  |
| 5  | INPUT PRESET 005                           |          | 4   | USER PRESET 04      |       |  |
| 6  | INPUT PRESET 006                           |          | 5   | USER PRESET 05      |       |  |
| 7  | INPUT PRESET 007                           |          | 6   | USER PRESET 06      |       |  |
| 8  | INPUT PRESET 008                           |          | 7   | USER PRESET 07      |       |  |
| 9  | INPUT PRESET 009                           |          | 8   | USER PRESET 08      |       |  |
| 10   | INPUT PRESET 010                           |          | 9   | USER DRESET 00      |       |  |
| 11   | INPUT PRESET 011                           | -        | 10  | USER DRSEET 10      | -     |  |
| 2<br>Save Pre  | set Recall Preset                          | Clear    | GSave Pre                                   | set   Recall Preset | Clear |  |

#### Figure 62. Input and User Presets Panels

There are 128 presets that are global to all inputs. The presets contain all of the settings for an input when used with an upstream matrix switcher. Input presets save signal type, signal sampling, and picture control settings.

There are 16 user presets per input to save picture control settings only.

#### To save a preset:

- **1.** From the Input Presets list (see figure 63, **1**) or the User Presets list (**5**), select the desired preset.
- 2. Click the Save Preset button (② or ③) in the same panel as the selected preset. If the selected preset already has stored information on it, the Presets dialog box opens. Click the Overwrite button to erase the previous data and save the new settings. Click the Cancel button to return to the Image Settings page.

#### To rename a preset:

- 1. In the Input Presets list (1) or User Presets list (3), double-click a Preset Name.
- 2. Change the name as desired.
- 3. Press the <**Enter**> key to save the new name.

#### To recall a preset:

- 1. From the Input Presets list (1) or the User Presets list (5), select the desired preset.
- 2. Click the **Recall Preset** button (③ or ⑦) in the same panel as the selected preset. The **Presets** dialog box opens.
- 3. Click the **Recall** button to recall the preset. Click the **Cancel** button to return to the Image Settings page.

#### To clear a preset:

- 1. From the Input Presets list (1) or the User Presets list (5), select the desired preset.
- 2. Click the **Clear** button (4) or (3). The **Presets** dialog box opens.
- 3. Click the **Clear** button to erase saved data. Click the **Cancel** button to return to the Image Settings page.

# **Size and Position Page**

The Size and Position page provides three methods of adjusting image output size and position: graphically, numerically, or automatically with Auto-Image. Click the **Size and Position** icon (see **figure 54**, **5**, on page 93) on the Global Navigation Bar to open the Size and Position page.



Figure 63. Size and Position Page

#### To adjust the size and position graphically:

If desired, click the **Lock Aspect Ratio** checkbox (see figure 64, **1**) to constrain proportions.

- 1. Click and drag the drag points of the sample image (2) to resize the image within the designated space (defined by the black area in figure 64).
- 2. Click anywhere inside the sample image (see the blue rectangle with a circle inside in figure 64) and drag it anywhere within the designated space to reposition the image.

## To adjust the size and position numerically:

- Enter a value or click the Up or Down arrow in the Horizontal Size and Vertical Size fields (3).
- Enter a value or click the Up or Down arrow in the Horizontal Position and Vertical Position fields (3).

#### To adjust the size and position automatically:

To automatically adjust these settings, perform one of the following (see **Auto-Image** on page 32 for more details on Auto-Image settings):

- Click the **Auto-Image** button (④) to perform a one-time Auto-Image.
- Click the Auto-Image & Fill button (6) to perform a one-time Auto-Image and fill the entire video output (ignores aspect ratio settings).
- Click the **Auto-Image & Follow** button (**6**) to perform a one-time Auto-Image and to maintain the aspect ratio of the input signal (ignores aspect ratio settings).

# **Audio Configuration Page**

From the Audio Configuration page, audio inputs and outputs are configured and mixed. Click the Audio Config icon (see figure 54, <sup>(6)</sup>, on page 93) on the Global Navigation Bar to open this page. There are four tabs for adjusting program and microphone inputs, mixing inputs, and configuring outputs.

Configuring the audio in order of the tabs from left to right helps ensure proper setup of input and output levels as well as mix and listening levels.

## **Configuration overview**



### Figure 64. Audio Configuration Tabs

- 1. On the **Line Input** tab (see figure 65, **1**), set audio input formats and set the input gain at optimal settings.
  - a. Set the audio format of each input (see Audio format on the next page).
  - **b.** Set the input gain for analog inputs (see **Input gain** on page 105).
- 2. On the Mic/Line Input tab (2), set the mic gain at optimal settings.
  - a. If necessary, apply phantom power to the applicable microphone inputs (see **Phantom power** on page 107).
  - **b.** Set the microphone input gain (see **Mic/line gain** on page 107).
  - **c.** If desired, apply a high pass filter to the microphone inputs (see **High pass filter** on page 107).
  - **d.** If desired, enable ducking for the microphone inputs (see **Ducking parameters** on page 108).
- After the line input gain and mic gain are properly set, mix the audio levels and set tone levels from the Mix Controls tab (③). If the results from this step are satisfactory, skip steps 4 as no other settings need to be adjusted.
  - a. Set the mic mix levels (see Mic mix levels on page 110).
  - b. Set the listening volume of the microphone inputs (see Mic volume on page 110).
  - **c.** Set the listening volume of the program audio (see **Program volume** on page 110).
  - **d.** Set the bass and treble levels for the program material (see **Bass and treble** on page 112).
- **4.** If necessary, set output limiters, mix options, or volume from the **Output** tab (**4**).
  - If desired, apply an output limiter to the desired outputs (see Limiters on page 114).
  - b. Set mix options of the output (see Mix options on page 114).
  - c. Set the output volume (see **Output gain** on page 116).

# Line input configuration

The Line Input tab contains options to set the audio input format for each input and adjust the input gain for analog inputs.





#### Audio format

The audio input format specifies whether the audio input is analog, digital, or not to be sent to the output.

**NOTE:** Multi-channel audio does not include microphone inputs or audio processing when it is sent to the output. It is also unaffected by volume control and does not show meter activity.

- For inputs 1 and 2, the only available format is **None**: audio is not sent to the output.
- For all other inputs, available formats include:
  - None Audio is not sent to the output. This option sets "No Audio" EDID.
  - **Analog** Analog audio from the corresponding analog input is sent to the output. This options sets "No Audio" EDID.
  - LPCM-2Ch The digital input is configured to receive 2-channel LPCM audio. This option sets 2Ch audio EDID.
  - **Multi-Ch** The digital input is configured to receive multi-channel audio. If multi-channel audio is not available, 2-channel LPCM audio is passed to the digital outputs. This option sets Multi-Ch audio EDID.
  - LPCM-2Ch Auto The digital input is configured to receive 2-channel LPCM audio. If 2-channel LPCM audio is not detected, the input switches to the corresponding analog input to send to the output. This option sets 2Ch audio EDID.
  - Multi-Ch Auto The digital input is configured to receive multi-channel audio, but will pass 2-channel LPCM if multi-channel audio is not available. If neither multichannel audio nor 2-channel LPCM audio is detected, the input switches to the corresponding analog input to send to the output. This option sets Multi-Ch audio EDID.

#### To select an audio format:

- 1. Click the Line Input tab (see figure 66, 1), on the previous page).
- 2. From the Audio Format drop-down menu (2) of the each input, select the desired format.

#### Input gain

The Input Gain fader can apply to analog or digital gain depending on the input. It has a gain range of -18 dB to +24 dB. Adjustments are applied in 0.1 dB increments. The default setting is 0.0 dB for digital audio and 12 dB for analog audio. The current level for each input is displayed to the right of the corresponding **Audio Format** drop-down menu.

#### To adjust the fader level:

- 1. Click the Line Input tab (1).
- 2. In the AV Controls panel (see figure 52, 2), on page 90), select the desired input.

## NOTES:

- Analog input gain adjustment applies only to analog signals. The Input Gain fader is available for analog gain only when the audio format is set to Analog, LPCM-2Ch Auto, or Multi-Ch Auto.
- LPCM-2Ch input gain adjustment applies only to digital signals. The Input Gain fader is available for digital gain only when the audio format is set to LPCM-2Ch, LPCM-2Ch Auto, or Multi-Ch Auto.
- If the audio input format is set to LPCM-2Ch Auto or Multi-Ch Auto, click the Analog radio button to adjust analog input gain or click the LPCM-2Ch radio button to adjust digital input gain (see figure 66, 3).



- **4.** Adjust the level using any of the following methods (**4**):
  - Click and drag the fader handle to the desired level.
  - Click in the level text field below the fader and enter a new value. Then, press the <**Enter**> or <**Tab**> key to apply the change.
  - Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow button to the right of the level text field to respectively increase or decrease the level in 0.1 dB increments.

When possible, set the analog input gain using the intended input source device and typical source material (program material). Use pink noise when the source material is not available.

# To optimize input gain with program material:

- 1. Click the Line Input tab (1).
- 2. For the web pages only: if necessary, select the **Enable Meters** checkbox (5).

**NOTE:** Meters are automatically enabled on the PCS.

**3.** Set the level so that the meters reach approximately -15 dBFS to -12 dBFS, with peaks at approximately -6 dBFS. This setting provides enough headroom to accommodate transients or unanticipated loud events in the program material to avoid possible clipping.

#### To optimize input gain with pink noise:

- 1. Click the Line Input tab (see figure 66, 1) on page 104).
- 2. For the web pages only: if necessary, select the Enable Meters checkbox (5).

**NOTE:** Meters are automatically enabled on the PCS.

- **3.** Set the input gain so the meters read approximately -20 dBFS.
- 4. If the audio source has an output level setting control, set the output of the player to the maximum or 0 dB of attenuation.
- **5.** If the maximum output setting provides gain, adjust the gain slightly lower than the maximum setting.
- 6. If the pink noise is being generated by a signal generator, set the output to -10 dBu.

## **Microphone audio input configuration**

There are two mic/line inputs for the IN1608 xi. The Mic/Line Input tab contains options to apply phantom power or a high pass filter to the microphone inputs, set ducking parameters, or adjust input gain on the microphone inputs.

| Audio Configuration                           |                          |          |         |                    |               |
|---|--------------------------|----------|---------|--------------------|---------------|
| Line Input Mic/Line Input Mix Controls Output |                          |          |         |                    |               |
| Mic/Line 1                                    |                          |          |         | -                  |               |
| Phantom Power High Pass Filter                |                          |          |         | 10 <sub>Gain</sub> |               |
|   | B <sub>Duck:</sub>       | Duck By: |         |                    | -<br>10<br>20 |
| A   | Mic/Line 2               | 20       | Ç dB    |                    |               |
| Threshold: -30 🔷 dBFS                         | ☑ Out 1                  | 20       |         | - <u>1</u> -       | -<br>40       |
| 6   | V Out 2                  | 20       |         |                    |               |
|   | Variable Out             | 20       |         |                    |               |
| Release Time: 1000 🔷 ms                       | Digital Outputs 1A,1B,1C | 20       |         | o AdB              | 4955          |
| Mic/l ine 2                                   |                          |          |         | Mute               | Enable Meters |
| Phantom Power High Pass Filter                |                          |          |         | Gain               |               |
|   |                          |          |         | - 60               | - 0           |
| ☑ Enable Ducking                              | Duck:                    | Duck By: |         |                    | 10            |
|   | Mic/Line 1               | 20       | 🔶 dB    |                    | 20            |
|   | ☑ Out 1                  | 20       | ≎ dB    |                    | 30            |
| Inresnoid: -30 GBF5                           | Out 2                    | 20       | Ĝ dB    | ÷ 0                | 40<br>        |
| Hold Time: 1000 🗘 ms                          | Variable Out             | 20       | ¢ dB    | -18                | 50            |
| Release Time: 1000  ms                        | Digital Outputs 1A.1B.1C | 20       | ¢ dB    |                    |               |
|   |                          |          | • • • • | 0 🗘 dB             | dBFS          |
|   |                          |          |         | Mute               | Enable Meters |



NOTE: Features for mic/line 1 and 2 are the same.

#### **Phantom power**

Phantom power adds +48 VDC to the mic/line input. The default level for the microphone input is 0 dB, muted. Having the input muted before plugging in a microphone and especially before turning on phantom power is recommended.

# **ATTENTION:**

- Condenser microphones require +48 V phantom power. Dynamic microphones do not require power. Never enable phantom power with an unbalanced dynamic microphone connected. Doing so may damage the microphone.
- Les microphones électrostatiques nécessitent une +48 V alimentation fantôme.
   Les microphones dynamiques n'ont pas besoin d'alimentation. Ne réglez jamais l'alimentation fantôme avec un microphone dynamique asymétrique. Cela pourrait endommager le micro.
- For condenser microphones, verify it will safely operate at +48 VDC.
- Pour les microphones électrostatiques, vérifiez qu'ils fonctionnent bien à +48 Vcc.
- When a line level source is connected, be certain the +48 V phantom power is off.
- Lorsqu'une source de niveau ligne est connectée, soyez certain que l'alimentation fantôme +48 V est débranchée.

#### To enable or disable phantom power:

- **1.** Click the **Mic/Line Input** tab (see **figure 67**, **1**), on the previous page).
- 2. In the Mic/Line input panel for the desired microphone input, click the Phantom Power button (2). The button turns blue when enabled.

### High pass filter

The high pass filter allows all frequencies at or above 100 Hz to pass unattenuated. All frequencies below 100 Hz are attenuated at 6 dB/octave to reduce background noise.

#### To apply or remove a high pass filter:

- 1. Click the Mic/Line tab (1).
- In the Mic/Line input panel for the desired microphone input, click the High Pass Filter button (3). The button turns blue when enabled.

## Mic/line gain

The mic/line Gain fader has a gain range of -18 dB to +60 dB. Adjustments increase or decrease in 0.1 dB increments. The default setting is 0.0 dB.

The gain range accommodates a line level signal, typically from line level source devices or a wireless microphone receiver with a line level output, or a mic level signal from dynamic or condenser microphones.

#### To adjust the mic/line gain fader:

- 1. Click the Mic/Line Input tab (1).
- 2. Adjust the level using any of the following methods (10):
  - Click and drag the fader handle to the desired level.
  - Click in the level text field below the fader and enter a new value. Then, press the <**Enter**> or <**Tab**> key to apply the change.
  - Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow button to the right of the level text field to respectively increase or decrease the level in 0.1 dB increments.
- **3.** To mute the mic/line gain, click the **Mute** button (11) below the mic/line **Gain** fader.

#### To optimize the mic/line gain on each microphone input:

- 1. Connect the desired microphone and route the mic/line input to the desired output.
- 2. If needed, click the **Phantom Power** button (see **Phantom power** on the previous page).
- 3. Set the mic/line Gain fader to 0 dB.
- 4. If the mic/line input is muted (the Mute button is red when the audio is muted), click the Mute button (see figure 67, (1)), on page 106) to unmute the mic/line input.
- 5. For the web pages only: if necessary, select the **Enable Meters** checkbox (12).

#### **NOTE:** Meters are automatically enabled in the PCS.

6. While speaking into a connected microphone, adjust the mic/line Gain fader until the mic/line audio input is clearly audible. Voice levels at microphone inputs can vary significantly, so gain and meter level readings may vary. Aim to have the meter averaging -20 dBFS to -15 dBFS to accommodate normal variances in voice intensity.

#### **Ducking parameters**

Ducking lowers the level of microphone or program material (based on a source signal from another microphone) for the duration of the signal that is present at the source microphone. It restores the original level after the source signal ceases and after the hold and release times are met. This is useful when:

- Program material must be attenuated in order to accentuate the voice of a narrator.
- One microphone is used by a chairman or master of ceremonies and must have priority over other microphones and program material.
- A paging microphone must attenuate all other signals.

#### To apply ducking for microphone inputs:

- 1. Click the Mic/Line Input tab (1).
- 2. From the desired Mic/Line input panel, select the **Enable Ducking** checkbox (4). The following ducking options become available:
  - Threshold Sets the input signal level in dB that the ducking source must exceed before ducking begins. The default is -30 dBFS.
  - **Hold time** Determines the time in milliseconds after a ducking source signal drops below the threshold before ducking ceases. The default value is 1000 ms.
  - Release time Determines how long in milliseconds the ducking targets take to
    restore signal levels after the ducking source level is below the threshold and the
    hold time is met.
  - Duck (targets) Shows all potential targets to be attenuated when ducking is enabled.
  - **Duck by (attenuation)** Attenuates the corresponding duck target in dB.
- 3. In the **Threshold** field (5), adjust the value by one of the following methods:
  - Enter a value in the Threshold field and press the <Enter> or <Tab> key.
  - Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow buttons.

If ducking does not occur quickly enough to avoid loss of speech or program material from the ducking source, decrease this setting. If ducking occurs too soon, allowing background noise to trigger ducking, increase the setting.

- 4. In the **Hold Time** field (see **figure 67**, **6** on page 106), adjust the value by one of the following methods:
  - Enter a value in the Hold Time field and press the <Enter> or <Tab> key.
  - Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow buttons. The default value is 1000 ms.
- 5. In the **Release Time** field (**7**), adjust the value by one of the following methods:
  - Enter a value in the **Release** Time field and press the **<Enter>** or **<Tab>** key.
  - Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow buttons.
- 6. In the list of **Duck (target)** checkboxes (8), select the targets to attenuate when the threshold is met. Only selected inputs are ducked.

**NOTE:** Only one mic input can be selected as a duck target at a time.

- **7.** For those targets checked in step 6, adjust the adjacent **Duck By** field (9) in one of the following methods:
  - Enter a value in the **Duck By** field and press the **<Enter>** or **<Tab>** key.
  - Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow buttons. The default is 20 dB. If additional attenuation of a target is required, increase this value.

## Audio mix configuration

After the audio inputs have been properly configured, select the **Mix Controls** tab (see figure 68, **()**) to mix microphone levels, create a mix of the microphone and program volume, and set bass and treble settings.



Figure 67. Mix Controls Tab

# **Mic mix levels**

Mic mix levels adjust the individual mic levels to create a proper blend (mix) of the two microphones. Adjust the **Mic 1** or **Mic 2** fader to adjust the desired mic/line level.

#### To adjust the mic mix levels:

- 1. Click the Mix Controls tab (see figure 68, 1), on the previous page).
- 2. Adjust the level using any of the following methods (2):
  - Click and drag the fader handle to the desired level.
  - Click in the level text field below the fader and enter a new value. Then, press the <**Enter**> or <**Tab**> key to apply the change.
  - Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow button to the right of the level text field to respectively increase or decrease the level in 0.1 dB increments.
- **3.** To mute the mic/line gain, click the **Mute** button (**3**) below the corresponding **Mic** fader.

#### **Mic volume**

Mic volume adjusts the listening level of the mic mix (the blend of the individual microphones) while maintaining the relative individual levels (see "Mic mix levels"). The **Mic Volume** fader has a range of -100 dB to 0 dB. It also includes soft limit handles (see **1** in the illustration at right) to adjust the minimum and maximum allowable range.



#### To adjust the mic volume:

- **1.** Click the **Mix Controls** tab (see **figure 68**, **1**).
- 2. Adjust the level using any of the following methods (4):
  - Click and drag the fader handle to the desired level.
  - Click in the level text field below the fader and enter a new value. Then, press the <**Enter**> or <**Tab**> key to apply the change.
  - Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow button to the right of the level text field to respectively increase or decrease the level in 0.1 dB increments.
- **3.** If desired for the **Mic Volume** fader, click and drag the minimum and maximum soft limits to define new minimum and maximum values within the original range.
- 4. To mute the microphone inputs, click the Mute button (5) below the Mic Volume fader.

#### **Program volume**

Program volume adjusts the listening level of the program source, independent of the mic volume. The **Program Volume** fader has a range of -100 dB to 0 dB. It also includes soft limit handles to adjust the minimum and maximum allowable range.

**NOTE:** Listening to the audio throughout the process of setting the program volume may be required for setting a nominal output level.

#### To adjust the program volume:

- 1. Click the Mix Controls tab (see figure 68, 1), on page 109).
- 2. Adjust the level using any of the following methods (6):
  - Click and drag the fader handle to the desired level.
  - Click in the level text field below the fader and enter a new value. Then, press the <**Enter**> or <**Tab**> key to apply the change.
  - Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow button to the right of the level text field to respectively increase or decrease the level in 0.1 dB increments.
- **3.** If desired for the **Program Volume** fader, click and drag the minimum and maximum soft limits to define new minimum and maximum values within the original range.
- 4. To mute the program volume, click the **Mute** button (7) below the **Program Volume** fader.

#### To adjust individual output gain:

1. Click the **Program Volume Offsets** button. The **Program Offsets** panel appears below the **Group Controls** panel.

NOTE: If the Program Volume Offsets button is not visible on the screen, slide the cursor to the right of the heading above the Program Volume fader, until the cursor becomes a "hand" icon and a Program Offsets text box pops up. Program Volume Program Offsets Click where the cursor is currently positioned (see I in the illustration above) to display the Program Assets panel.

2. Adjust the level of each desired output by any of the following methods:



#### Figure 68. Program Offsets Panel

- Click and drag the fader handle to the desired level.
- Click in the level text field below the fader and enter a new value. Then, press the <**Enter**> or <**Tab**> key to apply the change.
- Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow button to the right of the level text field to increase or decrease the level in 0.1 dB increments.

#### To optimize the program volume:

- 1. With the amplifier turned off, connect the Variable output of the scaler to an amplifier of appropriate size for the room and the speakers.
- Set the amplifier input level to a moderate level (for example, the twelve o'clock position on the amplifier dial). For amplifier and IPCP models, the amplifier input level setting is already set.
  - **NOTE:** The twelve o'clock position on an amplifier input level is generally a moderate level. This allows for the maximum signal to noise ratio and is easily repeatable. The actual value of the amplifier input level varies on each amplifier. While most amplifiers have a maximum input of +4 dBu, attenuating the amplifier input sensitivity by 12 to 17 dB usually allows for maximum output from the scaler.
- 3. Connect the speakers to the amplifier, assuring that polarity is not reversed.
- 4. Set the program volume to full attenuation.
- 5. Set the output volume to 100% (default).
- 6. Turn on the amplifier.
- 7. Play program material and adjust program volume to a reasonably loud yet tolerable level. Verify that the amplifier is not clipping.
- 8. If desired, set the upper soft limit on the program volume to set the maximum allowable level. This may be 6 or 12 dB above the current level (reasonably loud), or a value that is determined to be the loudest level allowable for the room. Verify that the amplifier is not clipping.
- 9. If desired, set a minimum allowable level by setting the lower soft limit.
- **10.** Set the mic volume to an appropriate level relative to program volume.

#### **Bass and treble**

Also known as shelving or tone controls, the bass and treble faders provide the ability to cut or boost levels. Both faders have a range of -24 dB to +12 dB. They also includes soft limit handles to adjust the minimum and maximum allowable range. The bass tone control corner frequency is 100 Hz. The treble tone control corner frequency is 8 kHz.

#### To adjust the bass or treble:

- 1. Click the Mix Controls tab (see figure 68, 1), on page 109).
- 2. Adjust the level using any of the following methods (8) or (9):
  - Click and drag the fader handle to the desired level.
  - Click in the level text field below the fader and enter a new value. Then, press the <**Enter**> or <**Tab**> key to apply the change.
  - Click the **Up** or **Down** arrow button to the right of the level text field to respectively increase or decrease the level in 0.1 dB increments.
- 3. If desired for the **Bass** or **Treble** fader, click and drag the minimum and maximum soft limits to define new minimum and maximum values within the original range.

# **Output configuration**

The **Output** tab contains options to apply a limiter, set mix options, or adjust output gain. Each output has a panel containing these options, but each panel may appear slightly different depending on the scaler model.

| Amplified   |                           |  |   |
|---|---------------------------|--|---|
| Amplified L and R:<br>Mix Options<br>Stereo Program V Mic/Line<br>Dual Mono Program<br>No Program | Ceft C Right              | L<br>- 0<br>10<br>- 20<br>20<br>30<br>40<br>50 | R - 0<br>10<br>20<br>30<br>30<br>30<br>50 |
|   | Mute 0 0 dB Enable Meters | dBFS   | dBFS                                      |











| Mix Options  |                   |                                   |   |
|--|-------------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| Stereo Program Mic/Line     Dual Mono Program     No Program |                   | - 0<br>10<br>20<br>30<br>40<br>50 | - 0<br>10<br>20<br>20<br>30<br>40<br>50 |
|  | -85 🗘 dB -85 🗘 dB | Enable Meters                     |   |





## Figure 73. Digital Audio Output Panel

The digital output section displays the detected audio format sent to the HDMI or twisted pair output (see **Audio format** on page 104).

**NOTE:** If the detected format is Multi-Ch audio, the Left and Right faders and meters are not applicable.

# Limiters

The output limiters restrict the input signal level by compressing its dynamic range when exceeding a specified threshold. They are most commonly used to prevent clipping, protecting a system against component or speaker damage. They are enabled by default, which is the recommended setting for most configurations.

When a limiter is enabled, the following are set:

- Threshold Activates or deactivates the limiter (subject to attack or release time) after the signal level exceeds or drops below -0.1 dBFS.
- Attack time Activates the limiter after the signal level reaches or exceeds the threshold level for 2.0 ms.
- **Release time** Restores the output signal level to normal (unprocessed) levels when the signal level remains below the threshold level for 100 ms.
- **Ratio** Reduces the signal level at a 100:1 ratio when the limiter is activated.
- Soft knee Smooths and softens the transition from unprocessed to processed output levels.

#### To enable or disable a limiter on an output:

- 1. Click the **Output** tab (see figure 65, **4**), on page 103).
- 2. For the desired output, click the Limiter button (see figures 70, 1), on the previous page, through 74, 1), above) in the appropriate output section.

#### **Mix options**

Output mix options determine what audio is output. Options vary depending on device model and output connector.

#### For amplified outputs:

- 1. Click the **Output** tab (see figure 65, **4**).
- If desired, deselect the Mic/Line checkbox in the Mix Options panel (see figures 71 and 72, 2), on the previous page) to not include the mic/line inputs in the amplified output (this is selected by default).

- 3. In the Mix Options panel (see figures 71 and 72, 2), on page 113), click the desired radio button. The amplifier models have different options based on the type of amplified audio output connector.
  - For stereo models, the mix options include the following:
    - **Stereo Program** Outputs program audio as left and right stereo.
    - **Dual Mono Program** Sums left and right program audio and outputs it on each channel.
    - **No Program** Mutes program audio.
  - For mono models, the mix options include the following:
    - L + R Program (Mono) Sums left and right program audio on the output.
    - **No Program** Mutes program audio.

#### For analog outputs 1 and 2:

- 1. Click the **Output** tab (see figure 65, **4** on page 103).
- 2. If desired, deselect the Mic/Line checkbox in the Mix Options panel (see figure 72, 2), on page 113) to not include the mic/line inputs in the amplified output (this is selected by default).
- 3. In each Mix Options panel (2), click the desired radio button. The two outputs can be mixed together (see the table below).

| Output 1     | Output 2      | Result  |  |  |  |
|--------------|---------------|---|--|--|--|
| Left Program | Right Program | Output 1 and 2 act as a stereo pair (default).  |  |  |  |
| L+R Program  | L+R Program   | L and R program audio are summed on each<br>output. They act as unique, independent<br>outputs with or without mic. |  |  |  |
| No Program   | No Program    | No program audio. Output 1 and 2 are treated as unique, independent outputs with or without mic.                    |  |  |  |

#### For the variable analog output:

- 1. Click the **Output** tab (see figure 65, **4**).
- 2. If desired, deselect the Mic/Line checkbox in the Mix Options panel (see figure 73, 2), on page 113) to not include the mic/line inputs in the amplified output (this is selected by default).
- 3. In the Mix Options panel (2), click the desired radio button:
  - **Stereo Program** Outputs program audio as left and right stereo.
  - **Dual Mono Program** Sums left and right program audio and outputs it on each channel.
  - **No Program** Mutes program audio.

#### For digital outputs (HDMI 1A, HDMI 1B, and Out 1C):

- 1. Click the **Output** tab (see figure 65, **4**), on page 103).
- 2. If desired, select the Mic/Line checkbox in the Mix Options panel (see figure 74, 2), on page 114) to include the mic/line inputs in the output.
- 3. In the Mix Options panel (2), click the desired radio button:
  - **Stereo Program** Outputs program audio as left and right stereo.
  - **Dual Mono Program** Sums left and right program audio and outputs it on each channel.
  - **No Program** Mutes program audio.

#### **Output gain**

Each output has a gain fader for output gain adjustment.

**NOTE:** The detected program audio format can be None, Analog, LPCM-2Ch, or Multi-Ch.

#### To adjust the gain fader:

- 1. Click the **Output** tab (see figure 65, **4**), on page 103).
- If the section has multiple faders, click the Gang button (see figures 70, 72, and 73, 6), on page 113, and figure 74, 6), on page 114) to constrain the proportions between fader levels.
- **3.** Adjust the level using any of the following methods (see **figures 70-73**, **3**, on page 113, and **figure 74**, **3**, on page 114):
  - Click and drag the fader handle to the desired level.
  - Click in the level text field below the fader and enter a new value. Then, press the <Enter> or <Tab> key to apply the change.
  - Click the Up or Down arrow button to the right of the level text field to respectively increase or decrease the level in 0.1 dB increments.
- 4. To mute an output, click the Mute button (4) below the desired fader.

#### To optimize the output gain:

1. In the desired output section of the web page, click the **Enable Meters** checkbox (see **figures 70-73**, **5**, on page 113 and **figure 74**, **5**, on page 114).

**NOTE:** Meters are automatically enabled on the PCS.

- 2. Set the output gain to 0 dB.
- **3.** With program material (or pink noise) present on the input, adjust the output volume until the meters maintain a level just below clipping.

# **Group masters**

The IN1608 xi includes eight pre-configured group masters that allow multiple group members to be adjusted using a single group master control (see the table below for a description of each group master and the associated group members).

Group masters provide a convenient way to adjust multiple controls simultaneously. They can also be adjusted through a control system using SIS commands (see **Audio Configuration Commands** beginning on page 66).

| Group<br>Master | Group<br>Description | Group Controls<br>Panel Association   | Control Type          | Possible Members  |
|-----------------|----------------------|---|-----------------------|---|
| 1               | Program<br>Volume    | <b>Program Volume</b><br>fader on the Mix<br>Controls tab                         | Post-switcher<br>gain | Amplified output<br>Analog output 1<br>Analog output 2<br>Variable analog output<br>Digital outputs 1A, 1B,<br>and 1C |
| 2               | Program<br>Mute      | <b>Program Volume</b><br><b>Mute</b> button on the<br>Mix Controls tab            | Post-switcher<br>mute | Amplified output<br>Analog output 1<br>Analog output 2<br>Variable analog output<br>Digital outputs 1A, 1B,<br>and 1C |
| 3               | Mic Volume           | Mic Volume<br>fader on the Mix<br>Controls tab                                    | Pre-mixer<br>gain     | Mic/Line 1<br>Mic/Line 2  |
| 4               | Mic Mute             | Mic Volume Mute<br>button on the Mix<br>Controls tab                              | Pre-mixer<br>mute     | Mic/Line 1<br>Mic/Line 2  |
| 5               | Bass Control         | <b>Bass</b> fader on the<br>Mix Controls tab                                      | Bass gain             | Amplified output<br>Analog output 1<br>Analog output 2<br>Variable analog output<br>Digital outputs 1A, 1B,<br>and 1C |
| 6               | Treble Control       | <b>Treble</b> fader on<br>the Mix Controls<br>tab                                 | Treble gain           | Amplified output<br>Analog output 1<br>Analog output 2<br>Variable analog output<br>Digital outputs 1A, 1B,<br>and 1C |
| 7               | Output Mute          | Audio Mute<br>button on the AV<br>Controls panel                                  | Output mute           | Amplified output<br>Analog output 1<br>Analog output 2<br>Variable analog output<br>Digital outputs 1A, 1B,<br>and 1C |
| 8               | Output<br>Volume     | Front panel<br>volume knob<br>when set from the<br>Configure Groups<br>dialog box | Output<br>volume      | Amplified output<br>Analog output 1<br>Analog output 2<br>Variable analog output<br>Digital outputs 1A, 1B,<br>and 1C |

#### **NOTES:**

- Amplified output is for amplifier and IPCP models only.
- By default, all possible group members are selected for groups 1-7.
- The default selected group members for group 8 are amplified output (amplifier and IPCP models only) and variable analog output.

#### To configure the groups:

- 1. Click the Mix Controls tab (see figure 68, 1), on page 109).
- 2. In the Group Controls panel, click the **Configure Groups** button (10). The Configure Groups dialog box opens.

| Configure Groups          |   |      |
|---------------------------|---|------|
| Group                     | Members   |      |
| 1. Program Volume         | Output 1, Output 2, Variable L/R, Digital Outputs | ~    |
| 2. Program Mute           | Output 1, Output 2, Variable L/R, Digital Outputs | *    |
| 3. Mic Volume             | Mic/Line 1, Mic/Line 2                            | *    |
| 4. Mic Mute               | Mic/Line 1, Mic/Line 2                            | ~    |
| 5. Bass Control           | Output 1, Output 2, Variable L/R, Digital Outputs | *    |
| 6. Treble Control         | Output 1, Output 2, Variable L/R, Digital Outputs | ~    |
| 7. Output Mute            | Output 1, Output 2, Variable L/R, Digital Outputs | ~    |
| 8. Output Volume          | Variable L/R                                      | ~    |
|                           | Output 1  |      |
| 2 Seart Danal Maluma Kash | Output 2  |      |
| Front Panel Volume Khob   | ✓ Variable L/R                                    |      |
| Program Volume (Group #1) | Digital Outputs 1A,1B,1C                          |      |
| Mic Volume (Group #3)     |   |      |
| Output Volume (Group #8)  |   |      |
|                           | _   |      |
|                           | C   | lose |

#### Figure 74. Configure Groups Dialog Box

3. For the desired group master, click the corresponding drop-down menu (see figure 75, **①**) to display a list of available group members.

When changes are made to the associated control in the software, only the selected group members are affected (see the **table** on the previous page).

#### To assign a volume control to the front panel volume knob:

- **1.** Click the **Mix Controls** tab (see **figure 68**, **1**).
- 2. In the Group Controls panel, click the Configure Groups button (10). The Configure Groups dialog box opens.
- **3.** From the Front Panel Volume Knob list (see figure 75, **2**), select the desired volume control the front panel volume knob adjusts. The available options are:
  - **Program Volume (Group #1)** Adjusts the program audio (default).
  - Mic Volume (Group #3) Adjusts microphone volume.
  - **Output Volume (Group #8)** Adjusts the output volume.

#### **Group members**

Group members are individual controls that comprise the group master. They can be controlled individually, allowing for relative levels between members to be adjusted.

**NOTE:** Individual members of a mute group master that are muted outside of the group master remain muted regardless of the current group master state.

#### **Group controls**

When grouped, gain control members move together at relative levels. If one member reaches its limit, it retains that position while the other members continue to travel. When the grouped members travel in the reverse direction, the member that was at its limit reverts to its position relative to the other members.

When grouped, mute control members update to indicate they are part of a group. Group members can be individually muted as well. When grouped members are individually muted, they are exempt from the setting of the group master.

The Audio Configuration page has an output volume **Group Controls** fader, which is displayed to the right of each of the four audio configuration tabs. Figure 76, ①, shows the fader displayed next to the Line Input screen.



#### Figure 75. Group Controls Fader Beside Line Input Page

Use the **Group Controls** fader to adjust and set the volume level of all outputs at once. The fader contains high and low master controls that let you set your own maximum and minimum limits for the fader.

#### To adjust the volume using the Group Controls fader, do any of the following:

- Click and drag the handle of the audio level fader of the corresponding output.
- Click the **Up** and **Down** arrows in the field below the corresponding output.
- Enter a value in the text field below the fader.

Below the fader is a **Mute** button (2). Clicking this button mutes all audio signals. When you click this button, it turns red, like the **Audio Mute** button in the **AV Controls** panel.

# **Preset Management Page**

The Preset Management page gives access to input and user presets. Click the **Preset** Management icon (see figure 54, 7 on page 93) on the Global Navigation Bar to open the Preset Management page. (The preset management functions available on this page are duplicated in the Presets panel on the Image Settings screen (see Input Presets and User Presets panels, beginning on page 100).





#### To save a preset:

- **1.** Select the input preset or user preset (see figure 77, **1**) to store the current configuration.
- Click the Save Preset button (2) located in the same Input Presets or User Presets panel. If the selected preset already has stored information on it, a confirmation dialog box opens.



Figure 77. Presets Save Confirmation Dialog Box

On the confirmation dialog box, click the **Overwrite** button (see **figure 78**, **1**, on the previous page) to erase the previous data and save the new settings, or click the **Cancel** button (**2**) to return to the **Preset Management** page.

#### To recall a preset:

- 1. Select the input preset or user preset (see figure 77, 1), on the previous page) to be recalled.
- 2. Click the **Recall Preset** button (3) located in the same Input Presets or User **Presets** panel. A confirmation dialog box opens.
- 3. Click the **Recall** button to recall the preset or click the **Cancel** button to return to the **Preset Management** page.

# To clear a preset:

- **1.** Select the input preset or user preset (1) to be cleared.
- 2. Click the **Clear** button (4) located in the same section of the screen. A confirmation dialog box opens.
- 3. Click the **Clear** button to erase saved data or click the **Cancel** button to return to the **Preset Management** page.

#### To rename a preset:

1. Double-click a **Preset Name**, or right-click a **Preset Name** (see figure 79) and select **Rename**.

| ∃ Input | 3              |                  |  |  |
|---------|----------------|------------------|--|--|
| 1       | USER PRESET 01 |                  |  |  |
| 2       | [unassigned]   | Overwrite Preset |  |  |
| 3       | [unassigned]   | Recall Preset    |  |  |
| 4       | [unassigned]   | Rename           |  |  |
| 5       | [unassigned]   | Clear            |  |  |
| 6       | [upassigned]   | Ciedi            |  |  |

#### Figure 78. Renaming a Preset

2. Enter a new preset name and press the **<Enter>** key.

# **Device Settings Page**

The Device Settings page allows configuration of screen saver settings, auto switch modes, HDCP notifications, video and sync muting, on-screen display timeout, HDCP modes, and RS-232 insertion modes. Click the Device Settings icon (see figure 54, (3), on page 93) on the Global Navigation Bar to open the Device Settings page (see figure 80).

| Device Sett                                       | ings                                   |                                   |       |                  | -    |  |             |  |        |                 |       |          |        |   |
|---|--|-----------------------------------|-------|------------------|------|--|-------------|--|--------|-----------------|-------|----------|--------|---|
| Uscreen Saver ———                                 |  |                                   |       |                  | _4   | Auto Switc                               | :h-         |  |        |                 |       |          |        |   |
| Displays when no input s<br>Black<br>Blue with On | signal is detected<br>Screen Display ( | l:<br>OSD) Bug                    |       |                  |      | <ul> <li>Enab</li> <li>O</li> </ul>      | Pr          | Auto Switch<br>iority to the highest a | tive   | input number    |       |          |        |   |
|   | RGB                                    | Color Value: FF0                  | OFF   | Apply            |      |  | Pr          | iority to the lowest ac                | ive in | nput number     |       |          |        |   |
| ✓ Disable Sync.                                   | After: 60                              | seconds (0                        | -500] | )                | 6    | Mute Video                               | o a         | nd Sync                                |        |                 |       |          |        |   |
|   |  |                                   |       |                  |      | This may                                 | y a         | llow a connected sink                  | to go  | into a power    | savir | ng mode. |        |   |
| 2 HDCP Notification<br>Select display color wh    | en sending HDC                         | P content on a no                 | n-cor | npliant display: |      |  |             | Mute Vid                               | eo ai  | nd Sync         |       |          |        |   |
| O Black   |  |                                   |       |                  |      |  |             |  |        |                 |       |          |        |   |
| 3 OCD Input Information                           |  |                                   |       |                  | 6    | HDCR Mod                                 | lo -        |  |        |                 |       |          |        |   |
| OSD input information                             | displays after o                       | on input quitch                   |       |                  | 0    | Follow                                   | w I         | input                                  |        |                 |       |          |        |   |
| OSD input information                             | uispidys arter et                      | very input switch                 |       |                  |      | <ul> <li>Alway</li> </ul>                | ys I        | Encrypt Output                         |        |                 |       |          |        |   |
| Enable On Sc                                      | reen Display (OS                       | D)                                | 2)    |                  |      |  | w I         | input (with continuous                 | DVI    | trials)         |       |          |        |   |
| Duration On                                       | screen: 3                              | <ul> <li>seconds (1-50</li> </ul> | J     |                  |      | <ul> <li>Alway</li> <li>Disab</li> </ul> | ys I<br>ole | Encrypt Output (with<br>Authentication | ontir  | nuous DVI trial | ls)   |          |        |   |
| 7 RS-232 Insertion                                |  |                                   |       |                  |      |  |             |  |        |                 |       |          |        |   |
| Port  | Name                                   | Insertion Meth                    | od    | Insertion Port   |      | Baud Rate                                |             | Data Bits                              |        | Stop Bits       |       |          | Parity |   |
| Input 7   | Input 7                                | Captive Screw                     | ~     | 1024             | 9600 |  | ~           | 8                                      | 1      |                 | ~     | None     |        | ~ |
| Input 8   | Input 8                                | Ethernet                          | ~     | 1025             | 9600 | ~  | -           | 8 🗸                                    | 1      |                 | ~     | None     |        | ~ |
| Output 1C   | Output 1C                              | Captive Screw                     | ~     | 1026             | 9600 | ~  | -           | 8 🗸                                    | 1      |                 | ~     | None     |        | ~ |

Figure 79. Device Settings Page

## **Screen Saver panel**

When no active video is detected on the selected input, the screen saver mode is activated. The output sync can be disabled after a user-set duration, which allows display devices to go into a low power, standby state.

- 1. Click one of the radio buttons (1) to select a display when the screen saver is enabled.
  - **Black** Mutes video output to black for a set duration before disabling output sync (default).
  - Blue with On Screen Display (OSD) Bug Displays a blue background with a moving OSD message that indicates <scaler model>: Input <number> No Signal for a set duration before disabling the output sync.

- Custom Lets you select a screen color that is displayed when the screen saver is enabled. Do either of the following:
  - Click the desired screen color in the swatch table. The RGB value of the selected color is displayed in the **RGB Color Value** field.
  - Enter a color value in the **RGB Color Value** field and click the **Apply** button next to it.
- 2. Select a duration to display the screen saver before the output sync is disabled.
  - Select the **Disable Sync After** checkbox to disable the scaler output sync after a set duration without an active input. When selected, the **Duration On Screen** field becomes available.
  - In the **Duration** field, enter a value in the field or click the **Up** and **Down** arrows to specify a duration to wait before disabling output sync during inactivity. The default is to never disable the output sync.

# **HDCP** Notification panel

HDCP notification indicates when HDCP content restrictions prevent a video signal from passing. Select one of the following radio buttons (see **figure 80**, **2**), on the previous page):

- **Black** Displays a black or muted screen when an encrypted source is sent to a display that is not HDCP-compliant.
- Green Displays a green screen when an encrypted source is displayed on a sink that is not HDCP-compliant (default).

#### **OSD Input Information panel**

- To display input information on the OSD after input selection, select the Enable On Screen Display (OSD) checkbox (3).
- In the Duration On Screen field, enter a value or click the Up or Down arrow button to set a duration the information is displayed on the on-screen menu. The default value is 3.

#### **Auto Switch panel**

Auto switch mode automatically switches inputs based on detected input signals.

- 1. Select the **Enable Auto Switch** checkbox (4) to enable auto switch mode.
- 2. Click the radio button of the desired type of auto switch mode from the following:
  - **Priority to the highest active input number** Automatically switches the input to the highest numbered active input.
  - **Priority to the lowest active input number** Automatically switches the input to the lowest numbered active input.

#### Mute Video and Sync panel

Click the **Mute Video and Sync** button (**5**) to mute the active video and disable sync on the HDMI outputs.

# **HDCP Mode panel**

HDCP mode either follows the encryption status of the selected input or always encrypts the output. However, some sink devices require continuous DVI authentication trials to pass HDCP encrypted content after a power cycle or resuming from sleep mode. Select one of the following radio buttons (see **figure 80**, **(6)**, on page 122):

- **Follow Input** Encrypts the output only when required by the selected input source.
- Always Encrypt Output Always encrypts the output, regardless of the HDCP status of the selected input source.
- Follow Input (with continuous DVI trials) Encrypts the output only when required by the selected input source. Use this setting when DVI sink devices initially pass HDCP encrypted content, but intermittently display a green HDCP notification screen after a power cycle or resuming from sleep mode.
- Always Encrypt Output (with continuous DVI trials) Always encrypts the output regardless of the HDCP status of the selected input source. Use this setting when DVI sink devices initially pass HDCP encrypted content, but intermittently display a green HDCP notification screen after a power cycle or resuming from sleep mode.
- Disable Authentication Disables all output authentication and encryption. HDCP sources do not pass.

## **RS-232** Insertion panel (inputs 7 and 8 and output 1C only)

The DTP twisted pair input and output ports allow you to insert RS-232 control signals onto the same cable that carries video and audio to extend them to the over TP port on a connected endpoint (source or sink). The control signals can be inserted two ways:

- Ethernet to RS-232 insertion A control signal applied to the LAN port can be routed to any IN1608 xi scaler DTP port.
- Captive screw insertion A control signal applied to an RS-232 captive screw port is tied directly to the same-numbered DTP port.

The insert inputs and output, whether inserted via Ethernet or captive screw connectors, can support a baud rate up to 115200. You must physically connect a cable attached to the captive screw connector where a control signal is to be inserted (see **RS-232 Insertion** on page 44 for instructions on connecting cables for these insertion methods).

#### **RS-232** Insertion panel selections

The RS-232 Insertion panel (7) contains a table with the following columns:

- **Port and Name** These view-only columns list the names of the DTP inputs (Input 7 and Input 8) and the DTP output (Output 1C), that have been detected on the unit.
- Insertion Method This column contains drop-down menus from which you can select the method of RS-232 insertion (Captive Screw or Ethernet) for either or both inputs.

By default, **Captive Screw** is selected as the RS-232 insertion method for both inputs and the output. If desired, you can select **Ethernet** as the method, in which case you must also select the baud rate, data bits, stop bits, and parity from the other drop-down menus for the input or output. • **Insertion Port** — This column lists the insertion port numbers. The insertion port number must be stated from a specific starting point. This number is automatically entered as the Telnet port number when you establish communication with the insertion port. All insertion ports for the DTP inputs and output are numbered sequentially, starting with the number in the text field for input 7.

#### To change the insertion port numbers:

In the **Insertion Port** field for input 7, enter the first port number. Input 8 and the DTP output are assigned subsequent port numbers.

• **Baud Rate, Data Bits, Stop Bits, and Parity** — These four columns contain drop-down menus from which to select the port parameters of the inputs and output. These menus are available only if **Ethernet** was selected as the insertion method.

# **Hardware Pages**

The Hardware pages contain unit information and options for device naming, communication settings, updating firmware, executive and power modes, date and time settings, passwords, and reset modes. Click the **Hardware** tab (see figure 81, 1) to open these pages.



Figure 80. Hardware Global Navigation Bar

The Unit Information page gives a non-configurable view of information about the connected device. Click the **Unit Information** icon (2) on the Hardware Global Navigation Bar to open the page.

The following information is displayed:

- Part number
- Model name
- Model description
- Firmware version
- Temperature
- Default web version

- Device name
- DHCP status
- IP address
- Subnet mask
- Default gateway address
- MAC address
- DNS server

Click the **License Information** button to view details about third-party packages and associated licensing.

Unit Information Page

| icense Information | ×                         |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| License In         | formation                 |
| Package            | License                   |
| avahi              | GNU LGPL v2.1             |
| bstrlib            | BSD                       |
| busybox            | GNU GPL v2                |
| bzip2              | BSD                       |
| cjson              | MIT                       |
| expat              | MIT                       |
| ExtJS 4            | Sencha Commercial License |
| fcgi               | fcqi                      |
| freetype           | FreeType License          |
| gnupg-1.4.7        | GNU GPL v2                |
| gpgme              | GNU LGPL                  |
| ifplugd            | GNU GPL                   |
| jpeg               | libipeq                   |
| libassuan          | GNU LGPL                  |
| libcgicc 3.2.3     | GNU LGPL v2.1 -           |
|                    | Close                     |

Figure 81. License Information Dialog Box

To view a copy of a listed package license, click the link in the **License** column for the relevant package (see **Licensed Third-Party Software Used in the Scalers** on page 11).

# **Device Name Page**

The **Device Name** page allows you to assign or change the name or hostname of the connected device. Click the **Device Name** icon (see **figure 81**, **3**, on the previous page) on the Hardware Global Navigation Bar to open this page.





**NOTE:** The device name is used as the hostname of the scaler.

## To assign or change the hostname:

- Enter a name for the device in the name field (see figure 83, ●). This name can be from 2 to 63 characters in length with no spaces between characters. Only alphanumeric characters and the hyphen are valid. The first character must be alphabetical, and the last one **cannot** be a hyphen (-). If an invalid name is entered, a red symbol appears to the right of the name field.
- 2. Click the **App1y** button (2) to change the name or click the **Cance1** button (4) to keep the previous name.

**To reset the device name to the default:** Click the **Reset to Default** button (③). The default device name consists of the model name, followed by the last three hexadecimal character pairs of the product MAC (hardware) address. All parts of the name are separated by hyphens. For example: IN1608-xi-IPCP-SA-13-E5-5D.

# **Communication Settings Page**

The **Communication Settings** page contains options to adjust device settings for RS-232 and Ethernet connections. Click the **Communication Settings** icon (see **figure 81**, **4** on page 125) on the **Global Navigation** Bar to open the page.

| <b>Communication Set</b> | tings  |
|--------------------------|--|
|                          |  |
| RS-232                   | TCP/IP   |
|                          | Hostname: IN1608-IPCP-MA-70-15-65-90 🕧                             |
| Baud Rate: 9600          | <ul> <li>Use DHCP<br/>(Obtain IP address automatically)</li> </ul> |
| Parity Bit: None         | IP Address: 192.168.254.254  |
|                          | Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0   |
| Data Bit: 8              | Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0   |
|                          | 5 DNS Server: 0.0.0.0  |
| Stop Bit: 1              |  |
|                          | MAC Address: 00-05-A6-15-65-90                                     |
|                          | Apply Reset to Default Cancel                                      |

Figure 83. Communication Settings Page

## **RS-232 settings**

- 1. From the Baud Rate drop-down menu (see figure 84, 1), select the appropriate baud rate.
- 2. Click the Apply button (7).

# **Ethernet settings**

#### To configure the Ethernet settings for use with DHCP:

- **1.** Select the **Use DHCP** checkbox (**2**).
- 2. Click the Apply button (7).

#### To configure the Ethernet settings with a static IP address:

- 1. Ensure the Use DHCP checkbox (2) is not selected.
- 2. In the **IP Address** field (3), enter an IP address.
- 3. In the Subnet Mask field (4), enter the subnet mask if required.
- 4. In the **Default Gateway** field (**5**), enter the default gateway if required.
- 5. In the **DNS Server** field (6), enter a DNS server name if required.
- 6. Click the **App1y** button (7).

#### To reset to default settings:

To reset the device to default connection values, click the **Reset to Default** button (8).

#### To cancel changes:

At any time, click the **Cancel** button (**9**) to keep the last saved settings.

# **Update Firmware Page**

The Firmware Loader page provides a means of uploading firmware files to the connected scaler. Click the **Update Firmware** icon (see **figure 81**, **(5**), on page 125) on the Global Navigation Bar to open this page.

| update Firmware                     |        |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
|                                     |        |
| Select the firmware file to upload: |        |
| Firmware:                           | Browse |
| Current Firmware Version: 2.21.0001 | 2      |

#### Figure 84. Update Firmware Page

- 1. If necessary, download firmware updates from www.extron.com.
- 2. Click the **Browse** button (see figure 85, 1). The **Choose File to Upload** window opens.

| 🖸 Open 💽  |  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Computer + Local Disk (C:)  | Search Firmware 🔎  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Organize 👻 New folder   |  | )= • 🔟 😧  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4 鷆 Extron  | Name Date modified T   | Гуре Size   |  |  |  |  |  |
| ButtonLabelGenerator  ButtonLabelGenerator  Dublectelist  Driver2  DSP_Configurator  DSP_Configurator  DSP_Configurator  EDID Library  Extron PCS  Extron PCS Beta  Extron PCS Beta v4.1  Extron VCS  Extron VCS  Extron VCS  Extron ConLib  Favorite EDIDs  Firmware  VWLoader  VVLoader | DSC_HD_3G_A_v1x01.S19         9/10/2013 12:53 PM         SI           DSC_JG_HD_A_v1x01.S19         9/13/2013 3:03 PM         SI           VLR_102         3/11/2016 2:37 PM         FI           SW H0 4K Series         12/13/2017 10:38 FI         FI           MLC 62 RS D and MLC 62 RS EU         3/11/2016 2:37 PM         FI           MLC 65 colo Series         3/11/2016 3:37 PM         FI           MLC 64 CS FO Series         3/11/2016 3:37 PM         FI           MLC 54 colo Series         3/11/2016 3:37 PM         FI           MLC 54 colo Series         3/11/2016 3:37 PM         FI           MLC 54 colo Series         3/11/2016 3:37 PM         FI           MDNP_3232_Series         3/11/2016 2:37 PM         FI           DXP H0 4K         3/11/2016 3:37 PM         FI           DXP H0 4K         3/11/2016 3:37 PM         FI           DXP H0 4K         3/11/2016 3:37 PM         FI           DYC_RGB-HD_A         6/22/2016 3:21 PM         FI           DYD PH DA 4K Series         10/20/2016 1:22 PM         FI | 19 File 1,973 KB<br>19 File 1,953 KB<br>19 Folder<br>19 folder |  |  |  |  |  |
| HDCTL_100<br>HDMICTL<br>IP Link Device Manager<br>ISM824  | DTP CrossPoint 4k Series         10/20/2016 11:16         FI           DSC HD-HD 4K         9/12/2016 2:02 PM         FI           DSC HD-HD         5/11/2016 2:50 PM         FI           DMP_44_LC         3/11/2016 2:37 PM         FI   | iile folder<br>iile folder<br>iile folder<br>iile folder  |  |  |  |  |  |
| File <u>n</u> ame:  | -  | All Files   Open  Cancel  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### Figure 85. Open Browse Window for Firmware Loading

- **3.** Navigate to the firmware file location on your PC and select the firmware file. Valid firmware files have an **.eff** extension.
- 4. Click the **Open** button. The window closes
- 5. Click the **Upload** button (**2**).

**NOTE:** The connection to the scaler may have to be reestablished.

# **Executive and Power Mode Page**

The Executive and Power Mode page contains options for enabling or disabling the front panel lockout and power modes. Click the Exec/Power Mode icon (see figure 81, 6 on page 125) on the Global Navigation Bar to open the page.



Figure 86. Executive/Power Mode Page

# **Executive mode**

Front panel lockout (executive) mode locks the front panel functions of the scaler.

- 1. Select one of the following radio buttons (see figure 87, 1) to set the Executive Mode (see Front Panel Lockout (Executive Modes) on page 42).
  - Unlock the Front Panel (default)
  - Mode 1: Lock Front Panel (complete lockout)
  - Mode 2: Limit Front Panel To Input Selection and Volume
- 2. Click the Apply button (3).

#### **Power mode**

The low power (standby) state disables all audio and video input processing and all audio and video outputs to save energy when the scaler is not in use.

1. Click the **Full Power** radio button or the **Low Power** - **Standby State** radio button (2) to select the desired power mode.

**NOTE:** It takes approximately 5-10 seconds to return the scaler to full power mode. Entering low power mode occurs immediately.

2. Click the Apply button (3).

# **Date and Time Page**

The Date and Time page contains adjustable device date and time settings. Click the Date and Time icon (see figure 81, 7), on page 125) on the Global Navigation Bar to open the page.

| Date and Time               |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------------|--|--|--|--|
|                             |  |  |  |  |
|                             |  |  |  |  |
| Date: Friday, June 07, 2013 |  |  |  |  |
| Time: 05:23:48 PM           |  |  |  |  |
|                             |  |  |  |  |
| Sync to PC Set Manually     |  |  |  |  |

#### Figure 87. Date and Time Page

To automatically sync the date and time to a connected PC:

Click the **Sync to PC** button (see figure 88, **1**).

#### To manually set the date and time:

- 1. Click the **Set Manually...** button (2). The **Date and Time Settings** dialog box opens.
- 2. Click the **Calendar** icon (see figure 89, 1) to open a calendar dialog box of selectable dates.

| Date and Time Settings           |    |    |      |       |    |     | ×            |
|----------------------------------|----|----|------|-------|----|-----|--------------|
| Date: Wednesday, January 24, 201 | _1 | )  |      |       |    | •   |              |
|                                  |    | J  | anua | ry 20 | 18 | ų – | $\mathbf{F}$ |
|                                  | S  | М  | т    | W     | т  | F   | S            |
|                                  | 31 | 1  | 2    | 3     | 4  | 5   | 6            |
|                                  | 7  | 8  | 9    | 10    | 11 | 12  | 13           |
|                                  | 14 | 15 | 16   | 17    | 18 | 19  | 20           |
|                                  | 21 | 22 | 23   | 24    | 25 | 26  | 27           |
|                                  | 28 | 29 | 30   | 31    | 1  | 2   | 3            |
|                                  | 4  | 5  | 6    | 7     | 8  | 9   | 10           |
|                                  |    |    |      | Foday | 2  |     |              |

## Figure 88. Calendar for Date Settings

a. Click the Date Picker button to the right of the month and year (2) to open a table of selectable months and years.

**NOTE:** Use the **Left** arrow or **Right** arrow button to view more years.

| Jan       | Jul |      | ▶    |  |
|-----------|-----|------|------|--|
| Feb       | Aug | 2014 | 2019 |  |
| Mar       | Sep | 2015 | 2020 |  |
| Apr       | Oct | 2016 | 2021 |  |
| May       | Nov | 2017 | 2022 |  |
| Jun       | Dec | 2018 | 2023 |  |
| OK Cancel |     |      |      |  |

- **b.** From the **Date Picker** table (see the illustration at right) select the month and year.
- **c.** Click the **OK** button to accept the new settings, or click the **Cancel** button to exit the dialog box.

**NOTE:** Alternatively, click the **Previous Month** or **Next Month** button on the far left and right of the month and year to cycle through dates.

d. Select the day.

**NOTE:** Click the **Today** button to select the current day on the host device.

- **3.** Click outside the Calendar dialog box to save the selection.
- 4. For the **Time** fields, enter a valid value in the various time fields or click the **Up** or **Down** arrow button to specify hours, minutes, and seconds.
- 5. From the drop-down menu to the right of the Seconds field, select AM or PM.
- 6. Click the Apply button.

# **Password Page**

The Password page allows the user to set an administrator and user password on the device. Click the **Password** icon (see **figure 81**, **3** on page 125) on the **Global Navigation Bar** to open the page.

**NOTE:** The factory configured passwords for all accounts on this device have been set to the device serial number. Passwords are case sensitive. In the event of a reset to factory defaults, the passwords are set to no password.

| Password                 |          |
|--------------------------|----------|
|                          |          |
| Login ID: admin          |          |
| OAdministrator Password: | 1        |
| Oconfirm Password:       | ī        |
| Show Characters          | Clear    |
| Login ID: user           |          |
| G Confirm Password       |          |
| 6 Show Characters        | Clear    |
| O Appl                   | y Cancel |

#### Figure 89. Password Page

Administrators and users can view all settings on the device. Administrators have the ability to make adjustments to any setting. Users can make changes only to input selection, volume, freeze, user preset recall, input preset recall, audio mute, video mute, Auto-Image, Auto-Image and Fill, and Auto-Image and Follow.

**NOTE:** If a password is set, a username is required to access the internal web pages or the device through the PCS program. When prompted, enter admin as the username for administrator passwords or user as the username for user passwords.

#### To create or change an administrator password:

- 1. In the Administrator Password field (see figure 90, 1), on the previous page) enter the desired administrator password.
- 2. In the **Confirm Password** field (2), reenter the administrator password.

**NOTE:** Select the **Show Characters** checkbox (3) to display the password characters.

**3.** Click the **App1y** button (**7**).

To create a user password:

**NOTE:** A user password cannot be set until an administrator password has been entered.

- 1. In the **User Password** field (4), enter the desired user password.
- 2. In the **Confirm Password** field (**5**), reenter the user password.

**NOTE:** Select the **Show Characters** checkbox (**6**) to display the password characters.

**3.** Click the **App1y** button (**7**).

# **Reset Device Page**

The Reset Device page allows the user to reset the device. Click on the **Reset Device** icon (see **figure 81**, **9** on page 125) on the **Global Navigation Bar** to open the page.

| le | set Device   |
|----|--|
| D  |  |
|    | Reset Device Settings (Retains TCP/IP Settings)  |
|    | Reset Device Settings and Delete Files (Retains TCP/IP Settings)     Reset All Settings and Delete Files |
|    | <ul> <li>Reset All Settings and Delete Files</li> </ul>  |
|    | Q Apply  |

#### Figure 90. Reset Device Page

Three reset options are available from this page (see figure 91, 1):

 Reset Device Settings (Retains TCP/IP Settings) — Resets the settings associated with input settings, the output image, EDID, and audio, and also includes presets and auto memories (excludes communication settings).

**NOTE:** Communication settings include the IP address, subnet mask, gateway IP address, DHCP setting, and port mapping.

- Reset Device Settings and Delete Files (Retains TCP/IP Settings) Resets all settings on the device to factory defaults (deletes user files), except the Ethernet settings.
- Reset All Settings and Delete Files Resets all settings on the device to factory defaults, including the communication settings (deletes user files). This is equivalent to the Ese ZQQQ SIS command.

## **NOTES:**

- The default IP address is 192.168.254.254. The default DHCP setting is Off.
- The factory configured passwords for all accounts on this device have been set to the device serial number. Passwords are case sensitive. In the event of a reset to factory defaults, the passwords are set to no password.

#### To reset the device:

- 1. Click the radio button of the desired reset option (see figure 91, 1), on the previous page).
- 2. Click the Apply button (2). A confirmation dialog box opens.
- 3. In the dialog box, click the **Reset** button to continue with the reset, or the **Cancel** button to abort the reset.

# **Reference** Information

This section provides reference or supplemental information. Topics in this section include:

- Mounting
- Downloading Updated Firmware

# Mounting

# **Tabletop Mounting**

Attach the provided rubber feet to the bottom four corners of the enclosure.

#### **UL Guidelines for rack mounted devices**

The following Underwriters Laboratories (UL) guidelines pertain to the safe installation of the IN1608 xi switcher in a rack.

#### **CAUTION:**

- Elevated operating ambient temperature If the equipment is installed in a closed or multi-unit rack assembly, the operating ambient temperature of the rack environment may be greater than room ambient temperature. Therefore, install the equipment in an environment compatible with the maximum ambient temperature (TMA = +122 °F, +50 °C) specified by Extron.
- **Reduced air flow** Install the equipment in a rack so that the amount of air flow required for safe operation of the equipment is not compromised.
- **Mechanical loading** When mounting the equipment in the rack, ensure that uneven mechanical loading does not cause a hazardous condition.
- **Circuit overloading** When connecting the equipment to the supply circuit, consider the effect that circuit overloading might have on overcurrent protection and supply wiring. Consider equipment nameplate ratings when addressing this concern.
- Reliable earthing (grounding) Maintain reliable grounding of rackmounted equipment. Pay particular attention to supply connections other than direct connections to the branch circuit (for example, use of power strips).

#### **Consignes UL pour le Montage en Rack**

Les consignes UL (« Underwriters Laboratories ») suivantes concernent l'installation en rack d'un boîtier IN1608 xi:

#### **ATTENTION :**

- Température ambiante élevée En cas d'installation de l'équipement dans un rack fermé ou composé de plusieurs unités, la température du rack peut être supérieure à la température ambiante. Par conséquent, il est préférable d'installer l'équipement dans un environnement qui respecte la température ambiante maximale (Tma) spécifiée par Extron.
- Réduction du flux d'air Si l'équipement est installé dans un rack, veillez à ce que le flux d'air nécessaire pour un fonctionnement sécurisé de l'équipement soit respecté.
- **Charge mécanique** Installez l'équipement en rack de manière à éviter toute situation dangereuse causée par le déséquilibre de la charge mécanique.
- Surcharge électrique Lorsque vous connectez l'équipement au circuit d'alimentation, observez la connexion de l'équipement et étudiez les effets possibles d'une surcharge du circuit sur les protections contre les surintensités et les conducteurs d'alimentation. Consultez à cet égard les indications de la plaque d'identification de l'équipement.
- Mise à la terre Assurez-vous que l'équipement est correctement mis à la terre. Accordez une attention particulière aux connexions électriques autres que les connexions directes au circuit de dérivation (ex. : les multiprises).

# **Rack Mounting Procedure**

Mount the scalers into racks with the pre-installed rack ears (see **UL Guidelines for rack mounted devices** above and on the previous page). To install the device, line up the screw holes on the rack ears on both side of the device with the screw holes in the rack so they device is level. Use the provided screws to attach the device to the rack.



IN1608 xi Scaling Presentation Switcher • Reference Information 135

# **Furniture Mounting**

Go to **www.extron.com**, for a list of available furniture mounting kits. To install the scaler to furniture, follow the mounting kit instructions.



Figure 93. Under-Desk Mounting (UTM 100 Shown)

# **Downloading Updated Firmware**

- 1. On the www.extron.com, click the Download tab (see figure 92, 1).
- 2. Move the pointer to the Firmware link (2) in the Downloads column and click it.

|  |  | 🧈 Contact Us 🔻 💄 Extron Insider 👻 🛧 My Favorites |
|--|--|--|
| Extron PRODUCTS -  | TRAINING - RESOURCES - COMPANY - DOWNL   | Power Search Q                                   |
| Find Software & Downloads > Downloads Control System Drivers DSP Templates Firmware HID Modules Software | Featured Software<br>Dante Controllier<br>DSP Configurator Software<br>Global Configurator Flus<br>Global Configurator Professional<br>GUI Configurator<br>GUI Designer<br>IP Intercom HelpDesk Software<br>PCS Product Configuration Software |  |
|  | VCS Videowall Configuration Software<br>XTP System Configuration Software  | EDID Manager 2.0<br>EDID Management Software     |

Figure 94. Downloading Firmware from the Extron Website
3. On the Download Center screen, click the I link (see figure 93, 1).

| Download<br>Software<br>Control System Drivers<br>DSP Templates<br>Firmware<br>HID Modules | Download Center<br>Firmware (192 files)<br>ALL # A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z<br>Archives<br>Please consult Release Notes for important compatibility information and history. |             |           |              |         |              |  |
|--|---|-------------|-----------|--------------|---------|--------------|--|
|  |   |             |           |              |         |              |  |
|  |   |             |           |              |         |              |  |
|  | Description   | Part Number | Version   | Date         | Size    |              |  |
|  | IN1508<br>Firmware for the IN1508.  | 19-1434-50  | 2.35      | Feb. 6, 2014 | 2.1 MB  | 🛓 Download   |  |
|  | IN1604<br>Firmware for the IN1604<br>Release Notes  | 49-268-01   | 1.16.0002 | Nov. 8, 2017 | 5.9 MB  | 🛓 Download   |  |
|  | IN1606/IN1608 Firmware<br>Firmware upgrade for IN1606/IN1608<br>Release Notes   | 49-172-50   | 2.36.0003 | May 21, 2018 | 36.9 MB | 🛓 Download 😢 |  |

## Figure 95. I Link on Firmware Download Center Page

**4.** Ensure the available firmware version is a later version than the current one on your device.

**NOTE:** The firmware release notes provide details about the changes between different firmware versions. The file can be downloaded from the same page as the firmware.

## **Extron Warranty**

Extron warrants this product against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of three years from the date of purchase. In the event of malfunction during the warranty period attributable directly to faulty workmanship and/ or materials, Extron will, at its option, repair or replace said products or components, to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore said product to proper operating condition, provided that it is returned within the warranty period, with proof of purchase and description of malfunction to:

| USA, Canada, South America,<br>and Central America:<br>Extron<br>1230 South Lewis Street<br>Anaheim, CA 92805<br>U.S.A. | <b>Asia:</b><br>Extron Asia Pte Ltd<br>135 Joo Seng Road, #04-01<br>PM Industrial Bldg.<br>Singapore 368363<br>Singapore | <b>Japan:</b><br>Extron Japan<br>Kyodo Building, 16 Ichibancho<br>Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo 102-0082<br>Japan                                |
|---|--|--|
| <b>Europe:</b><br>Extron Europe<br>Hanzeboulevard 10<br>3825 PH Amersfoort<br>The Netherlands                           | <b>China:</b><br>Extron China<br>686 Ronghua Road<br>Songjiang District<br>Shanghai 201611<br>China                      | <b>Africa and Middle East:</b><br>Extron Middle East<br>Dubai Airport Free Zone<br>F13, PO Box 293666<br>United Arab Emirates, Dubai |

This Limited Warranty does not apply if the fault has been caused by misuse, improper handling care, electrical or mechanical abuse, abnormal operating conditions, or if modifications were made to the product that were not authorized by Extron.

| <b>NOTE:</b> If a product is defective, please call Extron and ask for an Application Engineer to receive an RA (Return Authorization) number. This will begin the repair process. |  |                 |                |                |              |  |
|--|--|-----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|--|
| '  | USA:   | 714.491.1500 or | 800.633.9876   | <b>Asia</b> :  | 65.6383.4400 |  |
|  | <b>Europe:</b> 31.33.453.4040 or 800.3987.6673 |                 | Japan:         | 81.3.3511.7655 |              |  |
|  | Africa and                                     | Middle East:    | 971.4.299.1800 |                |              |  |

Units must be returned insured, with shipping charges prepaid. If not insured, you assume the risk of loss or damage during shipment. Returned units must include the serial number and a description of the problem, as well as the name of the person to contact in case there are any questions.

Extron Electronics makes no further warranties either expressed or implied with respect to the product and its quality, performance, merchantability, or fitness for any particular use. In no event will Extron Electronics be liable for direct, indirect, or consequential damages resulting from any defect in this product even if Extron Electronics has been advised of such damage.

Please note that laws vary from state to state and country to country, and that some provisions of this warranty may not apply to you.